http://waikato.researchgateway.ac.nz/

Research Commons at the University of Waikato

Copyright Statement:

The digital copy of this thesis is protected by the Copyright Act 1994 (New Zealand).

The thesis may be consulted by you, provided you comply with the provisions of the Act and the following conditions of use:

• Any use you make of these documents or images must be for research or private study purposes only, and you may not make them available to any other person.
• Authors control the copyright of their thesis. You will recognise the author’s right to be identified as the author of the thesis, and due acknowledgement will be made to the author where appropriate.
• You will obtain the author’s permission before publishing any material from the thesis.
The Chemistry of Cycloaurated Complexes

A thesis submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of

Doctor of Philosophy in Chemistry

at

The University of Waikato

by

Kelly J. Kilpin

February 2009
New cycloaurated complexes have been synthesised and characterised. The biological and catalytic activity (in the addition of 2-methylfuran to methyl vinyl ketone) of selected complexes was evaluated. New complexes reported in this thesis were fully characterised by NMR (\(^1\)H, \(^{13}\)C and \(^{31}\)P when appropriate) and IR spectroscopy, ESI-mass spectrometry and elemental analysis.

The simple cycloaurated iminophosphoranes \((2-\text{AuCl}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)\text{Ph}_2\text{P}=\text{N}-\text{R}\) (\(\text{R} = (\text{R,}S)\text{-CHMePh}, (S)\text{-CHMePh}, \text{p-}\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{F or Bu}') \) were synthesised by the reaction of the appropriate orthomercurated compound with \([\text{Me}_4\text{N}][\text{AuCl}_4]\) and \([\text{Me}_4\text{N}]\text{Cl}\) in acetonitrile; the complex \((2-\text{AuCl}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)\text{Ph}_2\text{P}=\text{N}-\langle S\rangle\text{-CHMePh}\) was structurally characterised. The cis chloride ligands on the complexes were replaced by chelating dianionic ligands such as thiosalicylate and catecholate – the resulting bis-metallacyclic complexes have a better anti-tumour activity (against P388 murine leukemia cells) than the parent dichlorides. The nitrogen-gold coordinate bond is relatively robust and is not cleaved by cyanide or dithiocarbamate ligands. The reaction of \((2-\text{AuCl}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)\text{Ph}_2\text{P}=\text{N-Ph}\) with \(\text{PPh}_3\) results in substitution of the chloride ligand \text{trans} to the nitrogen (shown by an X-ray crystal structure). Both the endo \(((2-\text{AuCl}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)\text{Ph}_2\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Ph})\) and exo \(((2-\text{AuCl}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)\text{C(O)N}=\text{PPh}_3)\) cycloaurated isomers of the stabilised iminophosphorane \(\text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Ph}\) were synthesised and structurally characterised.

Cycloaurated \(\text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{S}\) and \(\text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{Se}\) were synthesised by a transmetallation reaction from \(2-\text{Hg}[(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)\text{P(E)Ph}_2]\) (\(E = \text{S or Se}\)). The synthesis of cycloaurated \(\text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{O}\) by an analogous method was unsuccessful. \(\text{PhP(S)(NEt}_2\) was also cycloaurated \text{via} a transmetallation reaction. X-ray crystallography confirmed the sulfur (not the nitrogen) was coordinated to the gold centre. The complexes show a similar stability and reactivity to the \(C,N\) cycloaurated species – the \(\text{cis}\) chloride ligands can be replaced by the chelating thiosalicylate ligand. Again the bis-metallacyclic species showed better biological activity than the parent dichloride.
The direct reaction of the 2-pyridyl sulfonamide ligands 2-(C₅H₅N)CH₂NHSO₂R (R = p-tolyl, Ph or Me), 2-(C₅H₅N)CH₂CH₂NHSO₂R (R = p-tolyl or Ph) or 8-(p-tosylamino)quinoline with refluxing aqueous H[AuCl₄] gave N,N’ coordinated complexes containing a five- or six-membered cycloaurated ring. The cycloaurated complexes derived from the ligands 2-(C₅H₅N)CH₂NHSO₂Me and 8-(p-tosylamino)quinoline were structurally characterised. The cycloaurated N,N’ systems were not as stable as the C,N systems – reaction with reducing agents led to reduction of Au(III) to Au(I) and elemental gold.

The 2-pyridine thiocarboxamide ligands 2-(C₅H₅N)C(S)NHR (R= p-tolyl, CH₂Ph, Me, p-C₆H₄OMe) also underwent direct cycloauration upon reaction with H[AuCl₄]. Coordination via the pyridyl nitrogen and sulfur atom was confirmed by an X-ray crystal structure of cycloaurated 2-(C₅H₅N)C(S)NHCH₂Ph. The N,S cycloaurated systems show poor stability in solution and decompose relatively quickly so applications are limited. The ligand with a 2-pyridyl substituent reacted with H[AuCl₄] in a different manner. Instead of cycloauration, the ligand was oxidised and an internal cyclisation occurred to give a 1,2,4-thiadiazolo[2,3-a]pyridinium heterocyclic ring.

The reaction of the cycloaurated dichloride complexes (2-benzylpyridine)AuCl₂ and (2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)Ph₂P=N-Ph with the tripodal Kläui ligands (Na[(C₅H₅)Co{P(O)R₂}₃], R = OMe or OEt) and Tl[BF₄] resulted in the formation of cationic gold(III) salts. In the solid state the Kläui ligand is strongly coordinated through two of the three oxygen atoms, and weakly by the third, giving the gold a distorted square pyramidal geometry. In solution there is rapid interchange between the coordinated and non-coordinated oxygen atoms.
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Firstly I would like to extend my gratitude towards my supervisors Professors Bill Henderson and Brian Nicholson for their extensive help and guidance over the last three years. Without their enthusiasm and dedication this work would not have been possible.

I also wish to acknowledge the following people: Wendy Jackson and Pat Gread (electrospray mass spectrometry), Prof. Alistair Wilkins (NMR), Assoc. Prof. Lyndsay Main (organic chemistry), Dr Tania Groutso (University of Auckland) and Dr Jan Wikaira (University of Canterbury) for collection of X-ray crystallography data sets and Gill Ellis (University of Canterbury) for biological assays. Special thanks must go to my lab colleagues, especially Bevan Jarman who has been a good friend since we were both weedy little first years.

Lastly, financial support from the Tertiary Education Commission (Top Achievers Doctoral Scholarship) and the New Zealand Federation of Graduate Women (Merit Award for Doctoral Study) has been greatly appreciated.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

Abstract ........................................................................................................ iii
Acknowledgements .................................................................................. v
Table of Contents ...................................................................................... vi
List of Figures ............................................................................................ xi
List of Tables .............................................................................................. xiv
List of Abbreviations ................................................................................ xvi

CHAPTER ONE – Metallacyclic Gold(III) Complexes formed from Bidentate Monoanionic Ligands

1.1 Introduction to Gold(III) Chemistry ....................................................... 1
1.2 Metallacyclic Gold(III) Complexes formed from Bidentate Monoanionic Ligands ..... 3
   1.2.1 Complexes formed from C,N donor ligands ........................................ 3
   1.2.2 Complexes formed from C,P donor ligands ........................................ 15
   1.2.3 Complexes formed from N,N’ donor ligands ..................................... 17
   1.2.4 Complexes formed from N,O’ donor ligands ...................................... 20
   1.2.5 Complexes formed from O,O’ donor ligands .................................... 23
   1.2.6 Complexes formed from S,S’ donor ligands .................................... 24
1.3 Scope of this Thesis ........................................................................... 26
1.4 References .......................................................................................... 26

CHAPTER TWO – The Cycloauration of Iminophosphorane Ligands

2.1 Introduction ....................................................................................... 31
   2.1.1 Synthesis of iminophosphorane ligands ........................................... 31
   2.1.2 Stability of iminophosphorane ligands ............................................ 33
   2.1.3 Cyclometallated iminophosphoranes ............................................. 34
   2.1.4 Scope of this work ........................................................................ 46
2.2 Results and Discussion ................................................................... 46
   2.2.1 Synthesis of simple ortho-mercurated and cycloaurated iminophosphorane complexes ........................................................... 46
   2.2.2 X-ray crystal structure of (2-AuClC₆H₄)Ph₂P=N-(S)CHMePh, 2.29c ........ 48
   2.2.3 Spectroscopic and mass spectrometric characterisation of simple ortho-mercurated and cycloaurated iminophosphoranes .......... 50
2.2.4 Reactivity of simple cycloaurated iminophosphorane complexes with dianionic ligands .................................................................................................................. 52
2.2.5 Reactivity of simple cycloaurated iminophosphoranes with phosphines .......... 56
2.2.6 Attempted displacement of the N-donor ligand in simple cycloaurated iminophosphoranes .................................................................................................................. 58
2.2.7 Synthesis of stabilised ortho-mercurated and cycloaurated iminophosphoranes 59
2.2.8 X-ray crystal structures of (2-HgClC_{6}H_{4})C(O)N=PPh_{3} 2.42, (2-AuCl_{2}C_{6}H_{4})C(O)N=PPh_{3} 2.43 and (2-AuCl_{2}C_{6}H_{4})Ph_{2}P=NC(O)Ph 2.46 .... 64
2.2.9 Spectroscopic and mass spectrometric characterisation of ortho-mercurated and cycloaurated stabilised iminophosphoranes ........................................................................... 70
2.2.10 Biological activity ........................................................................................................ 74

2.3 Conclusions ................................................................................................................... 75

2.4 Experimental .................................................................................................................. 75

2.4.1 General ......................................................................................................................... 75

2.4.2 Syntheses of simple ortho-metallated iminophosphoranes and the reactions they undergo ..................................................................................................................... 76

2.4.3 Syntheses of ortho-metallated stabilised iminophosphoranes .................................. 84

2.4.4 X-ray crystal structure determinations ......................................................................... 88

2.5 References .................................................................................................................... 90

CHAPTER THREE – The Cycloauration of Phosphine Chalcogenides

3.1 Introduction ..................................................................................................................... 93

3.1.1 Metal complexes of phosphine chalcogenides .............................................................. 93

3.1.2 Scope of this work ......................................................................................................... 95

3.2 Results and Discussion ................................................................................................ 95

3.2.1 Synthesis and properties of ortho-mercurated phosphine chalcogenides complexes ................................................................................................................................. 95

3.2.2 Synthesis of cycloaurated gold(III) phosphine chalcogenides .................................... 100

3.2.3 X-ray crystal structures of (2-AuCl_{2}C_{6}H_{4})P(S)Ph_{2} 3.16b, (2-AuCl_{2}C_{6}H_{4})P(Se)PPh_{3} 3.16c, and (2-AuCl_{2}C_{6}H_{4})P(S)(NEt_{2}) 3.17 .......... 102

3.2.4 Spectroscopic and mass spectrometric characterisation of cycloaurated triphenylphosphine chalcogenides ......................................................................................... 107

3.2.5 Reaction of (2-AuCl_{2}C_{6}H_{4})P(S)(NEt_{2}) 3.17 with thiosalicylic acid ................. 109

3.2.6 Biological activity .......................................................................................................... 109

3.3 Conclusions .................................................................................................................... 110
CHAPTER FOUR – The Cycloauration of Pyridyl Sulfonamides

4.1 Introduction ................................................................................................................. 123
  4.1.1 2-Pyridyl derived sulfonamides as bidentate ligands ........................................... 123
  4.1.2 Examples of complexes of bidentate sulfonamide ligands ................................. 123
  4.1.3 Scope of this work .................................................................................................. 124
4.2 Results and Discussion ................................................................................................. 125
  4.2.1 Syntheses ............................................................................................................... 125
  4.2.2 X-ray crystal structures of 4.8c and 4.10 • CH₂Cl₂ .................................................. 128
  4.2.3 NMR and IR spectroscopic characterisation ......................................................... 131
  4.2.4 ESI mass spectrometric characterisation ............................................................. 133
  4.2.5 Biological activity .................................................................................................. 134
  4.2.6 Reactivity ................................................................................................................ 135
4.3 Conclusions .................................................................................................................. 135
4.4 Experimental ............................................................................................................... 136
  4.4.1 General ................................................................................................................... 136
  4.4.2 Syntheses ............................................................................................................... 136
  4.4.3 X-ray crystal structure determinations of 4.8c and 4.10 • CH₂Cl₂ ......................... 142
4.5 References ..................................................................................................................... 144

CHAPTER FIVE – The Cycloauration of Pyridine-2-Thiocarboxamide Ligands

5.1 Introduction .................................................................................................................. 147
  5.1.1 N-Substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamides as bidentate ligands ....................... 147
  5.1.2 Coordination complexes of N-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamides
      with heavy transition metals ....................................................................................... 148
  5.1.3 Scope of this work .................................................................................................. 150
5.2 Results and Discussion .................................................................................................................. 150
  5.2.1 Reaction of N-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamides ligands 5.12a-d with H[AuCl₄] .................. 150
  5.2.2 X-ray crystal structure of 5.13b ............................................................................................. 151
  5.2.3 Spectroscopic characterisation of complexes 5.13a – 5.13d .................................................. 154
  5.2.4 Mass spectrometric characterisation of complexes 5.13a – 5.13d ........................................... 156
  5.2.5 Reaction of N-(2-pyridyl)pyridine-2-thiocarboxamide (5.15) with H[AuCl₄] ............................. 156
5.3 Conclusions .................................................................................................................................. 160
5.4 Experimental .................................................................................................................................. 160
  5.4.1 General .................................................................................................................................... 160
  5.4.2 Syntheses .................................................................................................................................. 160
  5.4.3 X-ray crystal structure determinations of 5.13b and 5.16 ......................................................... 165
5.5 References ...................................................................................................................................... 167

CHAPTER SIX – Gold(III) Complexes formed with Kläui Ligands

6.1 Introduction .................................................................................................................................... 169
  6.1.1 Synthesis and properties of the Kläui ligand ............................................................................ 169
  6.1.2 Scope of this work .................................................................................................................. 170
6.2 Results and Discussion .................................................................................................................. 171
  6.2.1 Syntheses .................................................................................................................................. 171
  6.2.2 X-ray crystal structure of 6.5b ............................................................................................... 172
  6.2.3 NMR spectroscopic analysis .................................................................................................. 176
6.3 Conclusions .................................................................................................................................... 182
6.4 Experimental .................................................................................................................................... 182
  6.4.1 General .................................................................................................................................... 182
  6.4.2 Syntheses .................................................................................................................................. 183
  6.4.3 X-ray crystal structure determination of 6.5b ......................................................................... 185
6.5 References ...................................................................................................................................... 186

CHAPTER SEVEN – A Preliminary Study of the Catalytic Activity of Gold(III) Complexes

7.1 Introduction ..................................................................................................................................... 189
  7.1.1 Gold(III) homogeneous catalysis ............................................................................................. 189
  7.1.2 Catalytic addition of 2-methylfuran to methyl vinyl ketone .................................................... 190
APPENDIX ONE - General Experimental Procedures, Instrumental Techniques and Preparation of Starting Materials

I.1 General Experimental Procedures ................................................................. 207
I.2 Instrumental Techniques and Analysis ............................................................. 208
  I.2.1 Infrared Spectroscopy ............................................................................. 208
  I.2.2 Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy .............................................. 208
  I.2.3 Mass Spectrometry ............................................................................... 212
  I.2.4 X-ray Crystallography ........................................................................... 212
  I.2.5 Microelemental Analysis ....................................................................... 212
  I.2.6 Biological Assays .................................................................................. 213
I.3 Preparation of Inorganic and Organometallic Precursors .............................. 213
I.4 References ...................................................................................................... 215
LIST OF FIGURES

2.1 Molecular diagram of (2-Cl2AuC6H4)Ph2P=N-(S)-CHMePh 2.29c, showing the atom numbering scheme ................................................................. 49

2.2 31P{1H} NMR spectra for the series of simple iminophosphoranes with a Bu' substituent .............................................................. 51

2.3 Molecular diagram of 2.36f, showing the atom numbering scheme............. 55

2.4 Molecular diagram of 2.36f, showing the fold angle of the thiosalicylate ligand and puckering of the iminophosphorane ring ................................................................. 55

2.5 Molecular diagram of [(2-AuCl(PPh3)C6H4)Ph2P=NPh]^+.......................... 57

2.6 Molecular structure of (2-Mn(CO)4C6H4)C(O)N=PPh3, 2.41 ........................ 62

2.7 Molecular structure of (2-HgClC6H4)C(O)N=PPh3, 2.42, showing the atom numbering scheme ................................................................. 65

2.8 Molecular structure of (2-AuCl2C6H4)C(O)N=PPh3, 2.43 showing the atom numbering scheme ................................................................. 67

2.9 Molecular structure of (2-AuCl2Cl2C6H4)C(O)N=PPh3, 2.46, showing the atom numbering scheme ................................................................. 69

2.10 31P{1H} NMR spectra of the series of exo cyclometallated complexes ............ 71

2.11 31P{1H} NMR spectra of the series of endo cyclometallated complexes ............ 72

3.1 Structure of the complex (2-HgClC6H4)P(S)Ph2 3.13 showing the atom numbering scheme .................................................................................. 99

3.2 Molecular diagram of (2-AuCl2C6H4)P(S)Ph2 3.16b showing the atom labelling scheme .................................................................................. 103

3.3 Molecular diagram of (2-AuCl2C6H4)P(Se)Ph2 3.16c indicating the atom numbering scheme .................................................................................. 103

3.4 Molecular structure of (2-AuCl2C6H4)P(S)(NEt2)2 3.17 showing one of the unique molecules in the asymmetric unit .................................................................................. 106
4.1 Molecular structure of 4.8c showing one of the unique molecules in the asymmetric unit, and the atom numbering scheme...................................................... 128

4.2 Molecular structure of 4.10·CH₂Cl₂, showing the atom numbering scheme ........... 129

4.3 (a) Structure of 4.8c (molecule 1) showing the envelope conformation of the cycloaurated ring with N(2) sitting above the plane of the ring; (b) structure of 4.10·CH₂Cl₂, showing the planarity of the quinoline group, with Au(1) sitting below the plane. ....................................................... 131

4.4 ¹H NMR spectra of (a) 4.5a and (b) 4.8a, showing changes in the spectra upon coordination of the ligand to gold................................................................. 132

4.5 Positive ion ESI mass spectra of 4.8b showing the observed ions under different ionisation conditions: (a) neat solution; (b) with addition of NaCl; (c) with addition of pyridine (py). ....................................................................................... 134

5.1 Molecular diagram of 5.13b showing one of the unique molecules present in the asymmetric unit, and the atom numbering scheme...................................................... 152

5.2 Diagram showing the gold-sulfur interactions between the two molecules in the asymmetric unit of 5.13b. The different orientations of the phenyl rings can clearly be seen................................................................................................. 153

5.3 ¹H NMR spectra of (a) 5.12a and (b) 5.13a showing the changes in the spectra upon coordination of the ligand to gold........................................................................ 155

5.4 Molecular diagram of 5.16 showing the atom labelling scheme. ............................ 158

6.1 Molecular diagram of the cationic moiety of 6.5b...................................................... 172

6.2 Molecular structure of the palladium Kläui complex 6.6........................................... 173

6.3 Molecular structure of the palladium Kläui complex 6.7........................................... 174

6.4 Variable temperature ³¹P{¹H} NMR spectra of 6.3b................................................... 178

6.5 Variable temperature ³¹P{¹H} NMR spectra of 6.5b................................................... 179

6.6 Variable temperature ¹H NMR spectra of a) 6.3a at 303K, b) 6.3a at 223K, c) 6.3b at 303K and d) 6.3b at 223 K................................................................. 181

7.1 Response factor curve (determined by the area under the peaks) for 7.3 relative to o-xylene at different molar concentrations of 7.3 and o-xylene ................................. 198
A.1  $^1$H-$^1$H COSY spectrum of 4.8c .................................................................209

A.2  1D-SELTOCSY NMR spectra of 4.8c with mixing times of a) 15 ms, b) 30 ms and c) 50 ms. The spectrum shown in d) is a standard $^1$H NMR spectrum of 4.8c .....210

A.3  a) 1D-SELNOESY spectrum of 4.8c, with the signal at 4.96 ppm irradiated and showing a through space interaction to the proton at 8.05 ppm; b) standard $^1$H NMR spectrum of 4.8c.................................................................211
**LIST OF TABLES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Table Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Selected structural parameters for (2-Cl₂AuC₆H₄)Ph₂P=N-(S)-CHMePh, <strong>2.29c</strong> ...... 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>Selected structural parameters for <strong>2.36f</strong> .................................................. 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>Selected bond parameters for [(2-AuCl(PPh₃)C₆H₄)Ph₂P=NPh]PF₆·0.5Et₂O, <strong>2.39</strong> .... 58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>Selected bond lengths (Å) and angles (°) for the complex <strong>2.42</strong> ....................... 66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>Selected bond lengths (Å) and angles (°) for the complex <strong>2.43</strong> ....................... 68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>Selected bond lengths (Å) and angles (°) for the complex <strong>2.46</strong> ....................... 70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>Selected IR absorbances (KBr disk) for the metallated iminophosphorane Ph₃P=NC(O)Ph, including <em>endo</em> and <em>exo</em> isomers .................................................. 73</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>Anti-tumour (P388 murine leukaemia) activities for selected gold(III) iminophosphoranes and related systems .................................................. 74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>Crystallographic data for the complexes <strong>2.29c, 2.35f, 2.39, 2.42, 2.43</strong> and <strong>2.46</strong> ...... 89</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Selected structural parameters for the complex 2-HgCl(C₆H₄)P(S)Ph₂ <strong>3.13</strong> .............. 99</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Selected structural parameters for the complexes <strong>3.16b</strong> and <strong>3.16c</strong> ............... 104</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Results of a search of the Cambridge Crystallographic Database for η¹ coordinated Ph₃P=E ligands ................................................................. 105</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Selected structural parameters for the complex (2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)P(S)(NEt₂)₂ <strong>3.17</strong> ...... 107</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td><strong>³¹P{¹H}</strong> NMR chemical shifts (ppm) of the metallated phosphine chalcogenide ligands used in this study ................................................................. 108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Crystal and refinement data for the complexes <strong>3.13, 3.16b, 3.16c</strong> and <strong>3.17</strong> ...... 119</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>A comparison of selected bond lengths (Å) for the crystal structures of <strong>4.8c</strong> (two independent molecules) and <strong>4.10 · CH₂Cl₂</strong> ........................................ 129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>A comparison of selected bond angles (°) for the crystal structures of <strong>4.8c</strong> (including the two independent molecules) and <strong>4.10 · CH₂Cl₂</strong> ................................ 130</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>Crystal and refinement data for the complexes <strong>4.8c</strong> and <strong>4.10 · CH₂Cl₂</strong> ............ 143</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>Selected structural parameters for <strong>5.13b</strong> (both molecules) ................................ 154</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.2 Selected structural parameters for 5.16 ................................................................. 158
5.3 Unit cell and crystallographic refinement data for the complexes 5.13b and 5.16 ...... 166
6.1 Selected bond lengths (Å) and angles (°) for the complex 6.5b ................................. 173
6.2 $^1$H and $^{31}$P{$^1$H} NMR chemical shifts (ppm) for the Kläui ligands 6.2a and 6.2b (as the sodium salts) and the gold(III) complexes ................................................. 177
6.3 Crystal and refinement data for the complex 6.5b ................................................... 186
7.1 Performance of cyclometallated complexes in the addition of 2-methyfuran to MVK ...................................................................................................................... 194
7.2 Performance of C,N cyclometallated iminophosphoranes as catalysts in the addition of 2-methyfuran to MVK ................................................................. 199
7.3 Performance of cycloaurated triphenylphosphine sulfide and selenide as catalysts in the addition of 2-methyfuran to MVK ......................................................... 201
7.4 Performance of N,N’ cycloaurated 2-pyridylsulphonamides as catalysts in the addition of 2-methyfuran to MVK ................................................................. 203
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

Ac  -  acetyl
acac -  acetylacetonato
asym -  asymmetric (IR)
bipy -  2,2'-bipyridyl
br  -  broad
Bu  -  butyl
Bu' -  tertiary butyl
Cp  -  cyclopentadienyl (η⁵-C₅H₅)
cy  -  cyclohexyl
d  -  doublet
DMF -  dimethyl formamide
DMSO -  dimethyl sulfoxide
Et  -  ethyl
ESI-MS -  electrospray mass spectrometry
IR  -  infrared
J  -  coupling constant in Hz (NMR)
m  -  medium (IR) or multiplet (NMR)
Me  -  methyl
MVK -  methyl vinyl ketone
m/z  -  mass to charge ratio (ESI-MS)
NMR -  nuclear magnetic resonance
Ph  -  phenyl
py  -  pyridine
q  -  quartet (NMR)
s  -  strong (IR) or singlet (NMR)
sym -  symmetric (IR)
t  -  triplet (NMR)
Tf  -  triflate (trifluoromethanesulfonate)
THF -  tetrahydrofuran
vs  -  very strong (IR)
vq  -  virtual quartet (NMR)
w  -  weak (IR)
v  -  stretching frequency (IR)
δ  -  chemical shift (NMR)
CHAPTER ONE

Metallacyclic Gold(III) Complexes formed from Bidentate Monoanionic Ligands

1.1 Introduction to Gold(III) Chemistry

Gold and man have had a long and interesting association with each other. The earliest civilisations treasured gold - it was seen as a symbol of light and beauty. The chemical symbol for gold, Au, is derived from the Latin *aurum* which translates to ‘shining dawn’. The ancient Egyptian, Aztec and Inca cultures all linked gold to the gods and Aurora, the Roman goddess of dawn was named for the element. Since prehistoric times gold has also been recognised as a symbol of wealth. The Chinese were the first to legalise gold as a monetary unit as early as 1091 BC (little squares of the metal were traded) and later the Lydians (*ca.* 640 – 630 BC) introduced gold coins into circulation.\(^1\) Although gold is no longer issued as an official currency it is still seen as a safe investment.

The quest for gold has led man on many interesting journeys. The earliest was perhaps the infamous King Midas who had the desire that everything he touched turned to gold. Alchemists - the earliest inorganic chemists - had the common goal of transmutating base metals into gold. In the late 19\(^{th}\) and early 20\(^{th}\) centuries the value of gold sparked many to join the gold rushes of California, Colorado, Australia and New Zealand.

In nature gold occurs in the metallic form, often as an alloy with silver. It is a soft yellow metal whose beauty has led to its use in jewellery and other decorative purposes. Gold has the highest malleability and ductility of any element and the high thermal and electrical conductivity means gold has found many uses in electronics. It is the most noble of all metals and is not attacked by either oxygen or sulfur and only readily dissolves in aqua regia. The two predominant oxidation states of gold are +I and +III, although compounds containing
gold(II) are also well known. AuF\textsubscript{5} and the complex ion [AuF\textsubscript{6}]\textsuperscript{-} are the sole examples of gold in the +V oxidation state and both compounds are highly oxidising.\textsuperscript{(2)}

Gold(I) has ten \textit{d}-electrons (the full electron configuration is [Xe]4\textit{f}\textsuperscript{14}5\textit{d}\textsuperscript{10}) therefore compounds containing the metal in this oxidation state are diamagnetic and adopt a linear, two coordinate geometry. Being a soft acid (a Class b metal) gold(I) tends to prefer coordination to soft donor ligands.

Gold(III) has a \textit{d}\textsuperscript{8} electron configuration ([Xe]4\textit{f}\textsuperscript{14}5\textit{d}\textsuperscript{8}) and typically forms diamagnetic four coordinate 16\textit{e}\textsuperscript{-} species with predominantly square-planar geometry. Five coordinate gold(III) complexes are rare, but rigid bidentate nitrogen ligands (see Scheme 1.1 for recent examples containing bipyridine\textsuperscript{(3)} 1.1 or phenanthroline\textsuperscript{(4)} 1.2 backbones) form a distorted square pyramidal arrangement around the gold and it is assumed that intermediates in ligand substitution reactions have trigonal bi-pyramidal geometry. Octahedral geometry has been demonstrated crystallographically for the six coordinate species [Au(diars)\textsubscript{2}]\textsuperscript{+} 1.3\textsuperscript{(5)} Scheme 1.1. Being in a higher oxidation state, gold(III) is not as soft as gold(I) but still prefers to form complexes with soft ligands. For example, NCO\textsuperscript{-} bonds to the gold \textit{via} the nitrogen donor, NCS\textsuperscript{-} \textit{via} the sulfur.\textsuperscript{(6)}

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{scheme1.png}
\end{center}

\textbf{Scheme 1.1} Recent examples of unusual five- and six-coordinate gold(III) compounds.

Gold(III) is isoelectronic and isosteric with platinum(II), however the gold centre is much more oxidising and labile than the platinum centre. Compared with the chemistry of
platinum(II) [and palladium(II)], the chemistry of gold(III) (especially the organometallic aspects) has been relatively unexplored.

1.2 Metallacyclic Gold(III) Complexes formed from Bidentate Monoanionic Ligands

Consider the 14 electron gold(III) species AuR₃. This will be electron deficient, unstable and therefore highly reactive. However, the coordination of a neutral two electron donor (X:) will form a stable species X:→AuR₃. If one of the sigma bound ligands (R) has a pendant arm with a neutral two electron donor then there is the possibility of forming a cyclometallated complex.

As already stated, the chemistry of cyclometallated gold(III) complexes has historically been neglected relative to the other platinum group metals. However over the last twenty years this trend seems to be changing. Since the discovery of the anticancer activity of cisplatin (and other platinum(II) complexes) many gold(III) cyclometallated complexes (which show a structural similarity to cisplatin) have been synthesised with the aim of discovering biologically active complexes. In addition, the popularity of homogenous catalysis has spurred much research in the area.

The following review attempts to give an overview of metallacyclic gold(III) compounds formed from the coordination of mono-anionic bidentate ligands, with more attention given to systems directly related to this work. It is limited to the formation of neutral species with an emphasis on the synthesis, reactivity and applications of such compounds.

1.2.1 Complexes formed from C,N donor ligands

Cycloaurated complexes containing C,N donor ligands are by far the most extensively studied systems and because they form the basis of a recent review⁷ the following discussion will only be a brief overview of the synthesis and reactivity of such compounds.
Synthesis by direct C-H bond activation

There are two main synthetic routes to cycloaurated \(C,N\) complexes - the most simple procedure involves the direct activation of a C-H bond in the ligand by a gold(III) source, typically H[AuCl\(_4\)], Na[AuCl\(_4\)] or AuCl\(_3\).xH\(_2\)O. The reaction is typically carried out in refluxing polar solvents such as water, ethanol or acetonitrile. The insolubility of the cyclometallated gold complex in such solvents allows the product to be isolated easily in good yields. Scheme 1.2 shows the synthesis of cycloaurated 2-benzylpyridine 1.5 by the direct reaction of the ligand 1.4 with AuCl\(_3\).\(^8\) Other ligands which undergo analogous C-H bond activations to give cycloaurated six-membered ring systems containing pyridyl donor atoms include substituted 2-anilino-,\(^9,10\) 2-phenoxy-,\(^10\) and 2-(phenylsulfanyl)-pyridine.\(^10\)

![Scheme 1.2 Synthesis of cycloaurated 2-benzylpyridine 1.5 by direct C-H bond activation.](image)

In some cases the direct reaction of the ligand with the gold(III) source does not immediately result in C-H bond activation and the formation of a cycloaurated complex – instead the simple nitrogen coordinated adduct \(L_2\rightarrow\text{AuCl}_3\) is obtained. It is possible that this type of species is an intermediate in the direct cycloauration reaction as further heating of such complexes can lead to a metallacyclic product. As an example the cycloauration of 2-phenylpyridine 1.6 is shown in Scheme 1.3. The simple \(N\)-coordinated adduct 1.7 is obtained (in near quantitative yields as a yellow solid) when 2-phenylpyridine is added to an acetonitrile solution of H[AuCl\(_4\)] at room temperature. Refluxing 1.7 in aqueous acetonitrile yields the (white) cyclometallated complex 1.8 in 80% yield.\(^11\) Other ligands such as 2-(\(p\)-tolyl)pyridine\(^12\) and substituted 2-phenoxyPyridine derivatives\(^13\) also undergo cyclometallation reactions where the \(N\)-coordinated adduct is first obtained.
The cyclometallated complexes described so far refer to C-H bond activation of phenyl rings. Fuchita et al. reported that activation of a C-H bond in thiophene rings is also possible, thus the cycloauration of 2-(3-thienyl)pyridine 1.9 occurs directly upon reaction with Na[AuCl₄] in a refluxing acetonitrile/water solution. Alternatively, 1.11 can be obtained via the N-coordinated adduct 1.10.

Scheme 1.3 Synthesis of cycloaurated 2-phenylpyridine 1.8 via the N-coordinated complex.

Scheme 1.4 Different reactivity of the 2-(thienyl)pyridine isomers a) 2-(3-thienyl)pyridine 1.9 and b) 2-(2-thienyl)pyridine 1.12 towards [AuCl₄].
The isomer containing a 2-thienyl substituent (1.12) does not react in the same way. Direct cycloauration does not occur, however the N-coordinated complex 1.13 is obtained when 1.12 is reacted directly with Na[AuCl₄]. In this case heating the adduct 1.13 does not induce C-H bond activation. Instead, the addition of Ag[BF₄] to a refluxing solution of 1.13 promotes cycloauration to yield 1.14, possibly by the formation of a vacant coordination site on the gold via abstraction of a chloride ligand. The presence of silver(I) salts is also required for the cyclometallation of 2-benzoylpyridine.

In the examples presented so far, the neutral nitrogen atom is from a pyridyl group, however this does not always have to be the case. Indeed the imidazole group can also provide a neutral nitrogen donor. Therefore, the reaction of 1-ethyl-2-phenylimidazole with H[AuCl₄] in ethanol gives the N-coordinated adduct. This can be converted to the cycloaurated complex (albeit in low yields) by refluxing in dichloromethane with the aid of Ag[BF₄]. Using an analogous reaction scheme, 2-phenylthiazole undergoes a cycloauration reaction. In this case the nitrogen donor originates from a thiazole ring.

It can be inferred from the preceding discussion that both five- and six-membered cycloaurated rings are common. 3-Phenyl-6-p-toluidinopyridazine 1.15 is an interesting ligand as it has two different sites for metallation, which can result in either the formation of a five- or six-membered metallacyclic ring. Interestingly, though the reasons are not clear, the reaction of the ligand 1.15 with Na[AuCl₄] is regioselective and the six-membered auracyclic compound 1.16 is formed.

\[ \text{Scheme 1.5} \quad \text{Regioselective cycloauration of 3-phenyl-6-p-toluidinopyridazine 1.15 to give the six-membered auracycle 1.16.} \]
Although much less common than $sp^2$ C-H bond activation, direct $sp^3$ C-H bond activation by gold(III) is also possible. Vicente et al. demonstrated this nicely – the reaction of the 2-(alkylthio)pyridine ligands 1.17 with Na[AuCl$_4$] and Na$_2$CO$_3$ in acetone at room temperature (2:2:1 mole ratio) gave the cycloaurated complexes 1.18 in moderate yields (Scheme 1.6). It was proposed that the reaction is in equilibrium; the presence of Na$_2$CO$_3$ removes HCl from the system thus increasing the yield of the cyclometallated product.$^{(19)}$

![Scheme 1.6](image)

**Scheme 1.6** Auration of the alkyl C-H bond of 2-(alkylthio)pyridine ligands 1.17 (R = Ph, Me or OMe) by [AuCl$_4$].

**Synthesis by transmetallation reactions**

If direct cycloauration of a ligand is not successful, transmetallation from an *ortho*-mercurated complex is a method often employed to obtain the desired cycloaurated complex. Such is the case for the 2-($N,N$-dimethylaminomethyl)phenyl (damp) ligand 1.19. Scheme 1.7 shows the synthesis of the cycloaurated complex (damp)AuCl$_2$, 1.22. The *ortho*-mercurated complex 1.21 is synthesised by the reaction of an organolithium intermediate 1.20 with mercury(II) chloride. A subsequent reaction between the organomercury compound 1.21 and a gold precursor then transfers the organic group from the mercury to the gold.$^{(20)}$

![Scheme 1.7](image)

**Scheme 1.7** Scheme for the synthesis of (damp)AuCl$_2$ 1.22 by a transmetallation reaction from an organomercury precursor.
A range of other cycloaurated compounds is able to be synthesised by a transmetallation reaction from the corresponding ortho-mercurated compounds. These include substituted damp and oxazoline complexes, azobenzene, imines, phosphorimines, 2-phenylpyridines and 2-phenyl-4-(methylcarboxylato)quinoline.

Parish et al. proposed that the transmetallation reaction occurs as in Scheme 1.8, for a general C,N coordinated ligand. Initially the amine (which only weakly interacts with the mercury) coordinates to the gold giving a bimetallic intermediate. The aryl group is then transferred from the mercury to the gold, with the elimination of HgCl₂, to give the cycloaurated complex. [Me₄N]Cl is often used in the synthesis as it promotes the precipitation of mercury as insoluble [Me₄N]₂[Hg₂Cl₆], thus forcing the formation of the cycloaurated complex.

Chloride substitution reactions with phosphines

The strength of the interaction of the nitrogen donor with the gold greatly affects the chemistry of the cycloaurated complexes. Such an interaction has been evaluated by the reaction of cycloaurated complexes with tertiary phosphines.

The complex (damp)AuCl₂ 1.22 (Scheme 1.7) has a relatively strong nitrogen-gold bond – when reacted with a molar equivalent of triphenylphosphine the nitrogen-gold bond (and hence the metallacyclic ring) remains intact and a chloride ligand is replaced to give the cationic gold complex 1.23 (Scheme 1.9). Other cycloaurated systems which show a similar behaviour are those containing 2-thienyl-, (14) 2-anilino-(9, 10) and 2-benzylpyridine derivatives or 1-ethyl-2-phenylimidazole ligands.
Scheme 1.9 Reaction of (damp)AuCl_2 1.22 with PPh_3 which results in replacement of a chloride ligand to give complex 1.23.

In the above cases, X-ray crystallography has shown the phosphine is coordinated *trans* to the nitrogen donor atom. Presumably the phosphine initially replaces the chloride ligand *trans* to the carbon because of the greater *trans* effect of the aryl carbon over the nitrogen. An isomerisation step (by an unknown mechanism) would then follow to give the most (thermodynamically) stable isomer with the carbon and the phosphine *cis* to each other.\(^{(26)}\)

Interestingly, the reaction of cycloaurated 2-(alkylthio)pyridine complexes 1.18 (Scheme 1.6) with PPh_3 and Na[ClO_4] results in both isomers 1.24 and 1.25 being formed (Scheme 1.10). However, upon refluxing in chloroform they convert to 1.25, the most thermodynamically stable isomer.\(^{(19)}\)

Alternatively, if the nitrogen-gold bond is relatively weak then a tertiary phosphine will displace the nitrogen donor to give a neutral complex which no longer contains a metallacyclic
ring. This was observed for cycloaurated azobenzene\textsuperscript{(27)} \textbf{1.26} (shown in Scheme 1.11), 2-phenoxy- and 2-(phenylsulfanyl)-pyridine\textsuperscript{(10)} and 2-benzoyl pyridine.\textsuperscript{(15)}

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[draw] (a) at (0,0) {\textbf{1.26}};
\node[draw] (b) at (3,0) {\textbf{1.27}};
\draw[->] (a) -- (b) node[midway,above] {$\text{PPh}_3$}
node[midway,below] {Acetone};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

\textbf{Scheme 1.11} Reaction of (azobenzene)AuCl\textsubscript{2} \textbf{1.26} with PPh\textsubscript{3} which results in displacement of the neutral nitrogen donor atom.

**Chloride substitution reactions with monoanionic ligands**

The \textit{cis} chloride ligands on the cycloaurated complexes can readily be replaced by other monoanionic ligands.

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[draw] (a) at (0,0) {\textbf{1.28}};
\node[draw] (b) at (3,0) {\textbf{1.22}};
\node[draw] (c) at (6,0) {\textbf{1.33}};
\node[draw] (d) at (-3,-3) {\textbf{1.29}};
\node[draw] (e) at (0,-3) {\textbf{1.30}};
\node[draw] (f) at (3,-3) {\textbf{1.31}};
\node[draw] (g) at (6,-3) {\textbf{1.32}};
\draw[->] (a) -- (b) node[midway,above] {KBr};
\draw[->] (a) -- (c) node[midway,above] {KI};
\draw[->] (a) -- (d) node[midway,above] {KI};
\draw[->] (a) -- (e) node[midway,above] {KSCN};
\draw[->] (a) -- (f) node[midway,above] {AgOAc};
\draw[->] (a) -- (g) node[midway,above] {Ag[OC(O)C_6F_5]};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

\textbf{Scheme 1.12} Chloride substitution reactions of (damp)AuCl\textsubscript{2} \textbf{1.22} with monoanionic ligands.
The reactions shown in Scheme 1.12 are not exclusive to the damp complex 1.22, however this cycloaurated system has been the most extensively studied and chosen to give a general overview of the substitution reactions that are possible. The review by Henderson includes details of the analogous reactions other cycloaurated systems undergo.\(^7\) A simple metathesis reaction with KBr or KI gives the dibromo 1.28 or diiodo 1.29 complexes respectively, however the diiodo complex is unstable in solution.\(^{20}\) A similar metathesis reaction with KSCN gives the dithiocyanato complex 1.30.\(^{28}\) The carboxylate derivatives 1.31 and 1.32 are best obtained by reaction of 1.22 with AgOAc\(^{20}\) or Ag[O\(_2\)CC\(_6\)F\(_5\)] respectively. The acetate derivative 1.31 shows better solubility than the parent dichloride 1.22 and also shows promising anti-tumour activity.\(^{29}\) Reaction of 1.22 with Tl(acac) gives the \(C\)-bonded acetylacetonato complex 1.33.\(^{30}\)

It is worthy to note that in complex 1.30 the ambidentate thiocyanate ligands have been assigned to be \(S\)-bound to the gold centre, on the basis of IR spectroscopy. Because gold(III) is a soft metal this is not surprising. However a crystal structure of complex 1.34 shows that one thiocyanate ligand is \(S\)-bound (the one \textit{trans} to the nitrogen) and the other is \(N\)-bound.\(^{31}\)

\[ \text{Scheme 1.13} \text{ The di-thiocyanate derivative of cycloaurated 2-phenylpyridine 1.8. X-ray crystallography has shown that the one thiocyanate ligand is } S\text{-bonded, the other } N\text{-bonded.} \]

**Chloride substitution reactions with dianionic bidentate ligands**

The chloride ligands are also able to be replaced by dianionic chelating ligands forming complexes with two metallacyclic rings. Again, the reactions presented are not exclusive to the damp system but instead give a general overview of the chemistry that can occur.
The reaction of (damp)AuCl$_2$ 1.22 with either silver malonate or silver nitrate/oxalic acid gave the $O,O'$ bonded bis-carboxylate compounds 1.35 and 1.36 respectively.\(^{(29)}\) The $O,O'$ bonded catecholate complex 1.37 was formed when the parent dichloride was reacted with catechol in hot methanol, using trimethylamine as a base.\(^{(32)}\) The salicylate complexes 1.38 and 1.39 were synthesised by reaction of the 4-methoxy-substituted damp complex with salicylic acid – this time silver(I) oxide was employed as the base. Initially two isomers 1.38 and 1.39 were formed but converted to 1.39 upon standing.\(^{(33)}\)

![Scheme 1.14](image)

**Scheme 1.14** Bicyclic gold(III) complexes formed when the two cis chlorine ligands of the parent gold(III) dichloride complexes are replaced by $O,O'$-bidentate ligands.

The complexes 1.40 and 1.41 (Scheme 1.15), which contain $N,N'$ bidentate ligands were synthesised by the reaction of the parent dichloride with either a urea\(^{(34)}\) or a bis-amide\(^{(35)}\) ligand. In both cases the reactions were carried out in refluxing dichloromethane using silver(I) oxide as the base.
The aurathietane-3,3-dixoide\textsuperscript{(36)} 1.42, auracyclobutan-3-one\textsuperscript{(36)} 1.43 and auracyclobutane\textsuperscript{(37)} 1.44 complexes all contain four-membered cycloaurated rings, formed by the coordination of \(C,C'\) bidentate anionic ligands. As with the \(N,N'\) cycloaurated complexes the reactions were carried out in refluxing dichloromethane with silver(I) oxide as a base. The auralactam complex 1.45, synthesised by an analogous method, also contains a four-membered cycloaurated ring which is coordinated to the gold \textit{via} carbon and a nitrogen atoms.\textsuperscript{(38)} Crystallography has shown in the cases of 1.44 and 1.45 the four-membered rings are slightly puckered.

The reaction of (damp)AuCl\(_2\) 1.22 (Scheme 1.7) with Na\(_2\)[S\(_2\)C\(_2\)(CN)\(_2\)] in aqueous acetonitrile gave the maleonitriledithiolate complex 1.46 (Scheme 1.17), which contains a bidentate \(S,S'\)
coordinated ligand. Complexes with S,O bidentate ligands (1.47 and 1.48) were formed by the reaction of the parent dichloride complexes with ligands such as thiosalicylic acid (with the aid of Ag₂O) or mercaptosuccinic acid (as the silver salt).

![Diagram 1.46](image1.png) ![Diagram 1.47](image2.png) ![Diagram 1.48](image3.png)

**Scheme 1.17** Complexes formed when (damp)AuCl₂ 1.22 is reacted with sodium maleonitriledithiolate 1.46, thiosalicylic acid 1.47 and silver mercaptosuccinate 1.48.

**Displacement of the nitrogen donor ligand**

In the majority of the reactions discussed so far the original metallacyclic ring remains intact – the exception is the displacement of the neutral nitrogen donor by phosphine ligands, shown in Scheme 1.11. However, reaction of the parent dichloride complexes with ligands that are more strongly binding than the chloride anions can result in displacement of the nitrogen and cleavage of the metallacyclic ring. For example, when (damp)AuCl₂ 1.22 was reacted with excess KCN the NMe₂ group was displaced and the anionic complex [(damp)Au(CN)₃]⁻ was obtained (as the potassium salt). Dithiocarbamates can also displace the NMe₂ group, but the reaction is dependent on the mole ratios employed. One equivalent of dithiocarbamate resulted in the cationic complex 1.49, which contains the original metallacyclic ring and a chelating dithiocarbamate ligand. Two equivalents of dithiocarbamate led to displacement of the NMe₂ group and complex 1.50, which is fluxional in solution but has also been characterised crystallographically. Semicarbazones also displace the nitrogen donor, and in addition protonate the NMe₂ group. This has been shown for a range of semicarbazones; 1.51 is an example of such a compound that has been structurally characterised.
1.2.2 Complexes formed from \(C,P\) donor ligands

Examples of cycloaurated complexes containing a carbon-gold sigma bond and phosphorus-gold coordinate bond are limited to the systems developed by Bennett. The oxidation of the gold(I) \(o\)-styryldiphenylphosphine 1.52 with bromine (in benzene, at room temperature) gave yellow crystals which had microelemental data that were consistent with the formulation L\(\text{AuBr}_3\). It was proposed that the gold(III) tribromide 1.53 was formed initially but then one Au-Br bond adds across the \(C=\)C bond of the styrene moiety forming the metallacycle 1.54, the structure of which was confirmed by X-ray crystallography.\(^{(41)}\) The bromine attached to the methyl group could be replaced by \(\text{OME}, \text{OEt}\) or \(\text{OH}\) groups when 1.54 was refluxed in methanol, ethanol or aqueous acetone respectively. The dichloride analogue of 1.54 could be synthesised by the oxidation of the gold(I) chloride (analogous to 1.52) with chlorine.\(^{(42)}\)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ph} & \text{P} \text{AuBr} & \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} & \text{Ph} & \text{P} \text{AuBr}_3 & \xrightarrow{\text{ROH}} & \text{Ph} & \text{P} & \text{AuBr}_2 \\
1.52 & & & 1.53 & & & 1.54 & & 1.55
\end{align*}
\]

**Scheme 1.19** Proposed reaction scheme for the formation of five-membered \(C,P\) cycloaurated complexes.
The $o$-allyl-phenyl derivative 1.56 underwent a similar reaction with bromine and the six-membered auracycle 1.57 was obtained. When 1.57 was heated in either methanol or ethanol two alkoxy-derivatives were obtained in a 1:1 ratio. Separation by chromatography and fractional crystallisation revealed the presence of a six-membered (1.58) and unusually, a seven-membered auracycle 1.59 (Scheme 1.20).\(^{43}\)

\[ \text{Scheme 1.20 Proposed reaction scheme for the formation of six- and seven-membered } C\text{-}P \text{ cycloaurated complexes.} \]

Parish et al. investigated the substitution reactions of the bromide ligands of 1.54 and 1.55 (and the chloride ligands of the analogous derivatives) and found in some ways they mirror the results seen with the analogous $C\text{-}N$ cyclometallated complexes. Thus, a metathesis reaction with silver acetate gave a light-sensitive compound that was characterised as the diacetate complex on the basis of NMR spectrometry. With one equivalent of potassium thiocyanate the chloride ligand \textit{trans} to the phosphorus was replaced. In the reaction with two equivalents of AgCN both the chloride ligands were replaced by cyanide ligands, however if NaCN or KCN were used in place of AgCN the reaction was more complex and reduction to gold(I) was observed. With one equivalent of diethyldithiocarbamate the cation analogous to 1.49 (Scheme 1.18) was obtained.\(^{42}\)
1.2.3 Complexes formed from $N,N'$ donor ligands

Compared with the vast amount of research that has been accomplished using the $C,N$ systems described above, little work investigating the analogous $N,N'$ cycloaurated systems has been carried out. This is surprising as a N-H bond is somewhat weaker than a C-H bond hence the direct deprotonation and the formation of a Au-N bond would appear to be more facile.

The majority of bidentate $N,N'$ coordinated gold(III) complexes contain either picolinamide (2-pyridinecarboxamide) 1.60 or $N$-substituted picolinamide ligands. Two groups have independently described the reaction of picolinamide 1.60 with either $\text{H[AuCl}_4]$ or $\text{Na[AuCl}_4]$ in water to form the five-membered metallacycle 1.61 in good yields (Scheme 1.21).\(^{(44, 45)}\)

The amide functionality has been deprotonated and forms a coordinate bond to the gold, the neutral donor is provided by the pyridyl nitrogen. *In vitro* cytotoxicity assays of 1.61 with MOLT-4 (a human tumour cell line) and C2C12 (a mouse tumour cell line) indicate that 1.61 has a cytotoxicity similar to that of *cisplatin*.\(^{(45)}\)

![Scheme 1.21](image)

**Scheme 1.21** Direct N-H bond activation of picolinamide 1.60 by $[\text{AuCl}_4]$ to form the five-membered metallacycle 1.61.

The $N$-($p$-tolyl) derivative also undergoes cycloauration to yield 1.62 which has been structurally characterised. In addition, this complex has been shown to react with biological molecules. ESI-MS studies have indicated that the compound reacts with GMP (guanosine 5’-monophosphate) to give the bis-GMP adduct $[\text{LAu}(5\text{-GMP})_2]$.\(^{(46)}\) In a separate report, the $N$-alkyl (–$C_9H_{19}$) substituted complex 1.63, which has been structurally characterised, was shown to be an effective catalyst in dihydroindole formation from substituted furans and tetrahydroquinolines.\(^{(47)}\)
The related ligand 2-(3,5-diphenyl-1H-pyrrol-2-yl)pyridine also undergoes a cyclometallation reaction with Na[AuCl₄]. Again a five-membered auracycle 1.64 was obtained in good yields. The metallacycle appears relatively stable – the cis chloride ligands could be replaced in a transmetallation reaction with SnMe₄ to give the cis methyl derivative in good yields.²⁴⁸

![Scheme 1.22 Complexes formed by direct N-H bond activation of 2-pyridine substituted ligands to form five-membered metallacycles.](image)

The di-nuclear gold(III) complex 1.65 can be formed when the ligand N,N'-bis(α-picolinoyl)hydrazine is reacted with K[AuCl₄] in water. X-ray crystallography has indicated uninterrupted π-conjugation of the system.²⁴⁹ In addition, the ligand 6-amino-1,3-dimethyl-5-(2-chlorophenylazo)uracil also reacted with H[AuCl₄] in refluxing ethanol and gave the six-membered auracycle 1.66 as a red solid. The uncoordinated ligand possesses antineoplastic activity; disappointingly there was no report on the biological activity of the gold complex 1.66.²⁵⁰

![Scheme 1.23 Cycloaurated complexes formed by direct N-H bond activation of N, N'-bis(α-picolinoyl)hydrazine (1.65) and 6-amino-1,3-dimethyl-5-(2-chlorophenylazo)uracil (1.66).](image)
The reaction of a series of $\beta$-diazoketimates 1.67 with H[AuCl$_4$] in ethanol efficiently yielded the gold complexes 1.68. The six-membered chelate ring that formed showed a high degree of delocalisation, which was indicated by an X-ray crystal structure analysis of the phenyl substituted derivative.\(^{(51)}\)

![Scheme 1.24](image)

**Scheme 1.24** Synthesis of $\beta$-diazoketinate complexes of gold(III) (R = H, CH$_3$ or Cl).

The reactivity of gold(III) towards pyrazole (Hpz) has also been investigated. That is, when pyrazole 1.69 was reacted with aqueous Na[AuCl$_4$] (1:1 mole ratio) the adduct [Au(Hpz)Cl$_3$] 1.70, where the neutral pyrazole ligand was coordinated through the non-protonated nitrogen, formed immediately. Refluxing 1.70 in toluene resulted in N-H bond activation and formation of the cycloaurated species 1.71, where two pyrazolide ions bridge two gold centres. When 3-methylpyrazole was used in place of pyrazole the reaction proceeded directly to the cycloaurated species but in this case two geometric isomers were obtained. The gold complexes showed cytotoxicity against MOLT-4 and C2C12 cell lines that was comparable to that of *cisplatin*.\(^{(45)}\)

![Scheme 1.25](image)

**Scheme 1.25** Synthesis of dinuclear gold(III) complexes containing bridging pyrazolide ions.
A series of poly(pyrazole)borate anions ([HB(pz)$_3$]$^-$, [HB(Me$_2$pz)$_3$]$^-$, [B(pz)$_4$]$^-$ and [Ph$_2$B(pz)$_2$]$^-$) were reacted with H[AuCl$_4$]$^-$ in ethanol to give neutral Au(III) compounds 1.72 and 1.73 in acceptable yields. To maintain the square planar geometry required with gold(III) only two of the three pyrazolyl groups can be coordinated to the metal at any one time. However, at room temperature the $^1$H NMR spectrum showed three equivalent pyrazolyl rings. Variable temperature NMR studies of 1.72c found that at -60 °C three sets of signals occur indicating that above this temperature rapid interchange between the free and coordinated pyrazolyl rings is occurring which results in the equivalence of the three rings. Similar behaviour was seen for the other complexes. In an analogous reaction with [H$_2$B(pz)$_2$]$^-$ no product could be isolated probably because of the high reducing power of the borate anion that still contains two hydrogen atoms.(52) Vicente et al. reinvestigated the reaction of [HB(pz)$_3$]$^-$ with [AuCl$_4$]$^-$ and found that carrying out the reaction in water led to almost quantitative yields of 1.72c. In addition, a 2:1 ratio of [HB(pz)$_3$]$^-$ to [AuCl$_4$]$^-$ gave the homoleptic cation 1.74. Unlike the C,N cyclometallated complexes, substitution of the chloride ligands was more difficult and the reaction of 1.72c with PPh$_3$ led to unidentified gold(I) compounds.(53)

![Scheme 1.26 Poly(pyrazolyl)borate gold(III) complexes. (1.72a $R_1 = R_2 = Ph$; 1.72b $R_1 = Me$, $R_2 = Me$; 1.72c $R_1 = H$, $R_2 = pz$).](image)

1.2.4 Complexes formed from $N,O'$ donor ligands

The $N,O$ donor ligands that form complexes with gold(III) contain an anionic oxygen atom (which forms a sigma bond to the gold) and neutral nitrogen, arising from either a pyridyl or imine (Schiff base) group. To the best of our knowledge there are no examples of gold(III) complexes which contain ligands with a nitrogen-gold sigma bond and a neutral oxygen donor.
The cycloauration of a variety of 2-substituted pyridine compounds has been investigated. The reaction of pyridine-2-carboxylic acid 1.75 with H[AuCl₄] in water yielded the cycloaurated N,O coordinated complex 1.76, which contains a five-membered metallacyclic ring (Scheme 1.27). Pyridine-2-methanol (55) and 8-quinolinol (56) also reacted in an analogous manner to give five-membered metallacycles. The decomposition pathway of these complexes has been investigated and it appears that for the carboxylate derivative 1.76 the first step is displacement of the nitrogen donor followed by cleavage of the gold-oxygen bond.  

![Scheme 1.27](https://example.com/scheme1.27.png)

**Scheme 1.27** The reaction of pyridine-2-carboxylic acid 1.75 with H[AuCl₄] to give the five-membered metallacycle 1.76.

The biological activity of cycloaurated pyridine-2-methanol has been investigated. The compound was stable under physiological conditions (pH 7.4, 50 μM phosphate buffer, 0.1 M NaOH) – although the metallacycle remained intact, the chloride ligands underwent hydrolysis in water. The complex reacts with the proteins albumin and transferrin and in the case of albumin the gold(III) is reduced to gold(I), possibly by the cysteine residues – no reduction is seen with transferrin. In addition the compound also binds DNA and shows good cytotoxicity. The carboxylic acid derivative 1.76 has been shown to catalytically active in numerous organic reactions.  

Gold(III) complexes of Schiff bases were first described in 1973. The reaction of the thallium(I) salt of the Schiff base salicylaldimine 1.77 with [Me₂AuI]₂ in methanol afforded the six-membered cycloaurated complex 1.78, which contains cis methyl ligands, in good yields (Scheme 1.28). The ‘in situ’ deprotonation of the phenol group of salicylaldimine by NaHCO₃, followed by the reaction with [Me₂AuI]₂, also gave the cis methyl compounds but
excluded the use of toxic thallium salts.\textsuperscript{(68)} \(N\)-Isopropyl and cyclohexyl derivatives of salicylaldimine also undergo an analogous reaction - the resulting complexes are readily soluble in methanol and most other organic solvents. In addition, the cycloaurated complexes have volatility characteristics which make them ideal for metal-organic chemical vapour deposition (MOCVD) applications.\textsuperscript{(68)}

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=0.8\textwidth]{scheme1.png}
\end{center}

\textit{Scheme 1.28} Synthesis of cycloaurated complexes containing a deprotonated salicylaldimine ligand.

Reactions of the bis-bidentate imine ligands (as the thallium salts) \(\text{TI}_2(\text{salen})\) (salen\(H_2 = N,N'\)-ethylenbis(salicylaldimine)) and \(\text{TI}_2(\text{salphen})\) (salphen\(H_2 = N,N'\)-o-phenylenbis(salicylaldimine)) with \([\text{Me}_2\text{AuI}]_2\) gave the bis-cycloaurated complexes 1.79 and 1.80 respectively, which are expected to have a bridged binuclear structure (Scheme 1.29).\textsuperscript{(67)}

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=0.8\textwidth]{scheme2.png}
\end{center}

\textit{Scheme 1.29} Proposed structures of bis-cycloaurated complexes containing bidentate \(N,O\) ligands.

The direct reaction of the \(N\)-ethyalsalicylaldimine 1.81 with aqueous Na[AuCl\(_4\)] gave the \emph{cis} dichloride complex 1.82 which is blue-green in colour (Scheme 1.30).\textsuperscript{(69, 70)} The biological
activity of 1.82 was explored, and it showed good binding properties towards DNA. The binding is tight but reversible and it results in modest stabilisation of the double helix. Therefore, binding to DNA may be the mechanism by which the compounds are cytotoxic, however 1.82 has limited pharmaceutical applications because of poor stability in physiological media.\textsuperscript{(69)}

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}

\draw (0,0) node[anchor=east] {1.81} -- (1,0) node[anchor=west] {1.82};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

**Scheme 1.30** Synthesis of cycloaurated N-ethylsalicyldimine 1.82.

### 1.2.5 Complexes formed from $O,O'$ donor ligands

Examples of $O,O'$ mononegative bidentate ligands which coordinate to the gold(III) centre are limited to $\beta$-diketones, mainly acetylacetone (Hacac) 1.83, although other examples (e.g. dipivaloylmethane and dibenzoylmethane) are also known. The synthesis typically involves the addition of $[\text{Me}_2\text{AuI}]_2$ to the potassium salt of the $\beta$-diketone at room temperature, in a solvent such as ethanol (Scheme 1.31). The complexes are volatile (see later) so can be purified by sublimation onto a cold finger.\textsuperscript{(71, 72)} Alternatively, reaction of the solvated cations $[\text{Au(C}_6\text{F}_5)_2\text{Z}_2]^+$ ($Z =$ acetone, diethyl ether) with acac gave the complex $[\text{Au(C}_6\text{F}_5)_2(\text{acac})]$\textsuperscript{(73)}

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}

\draw (0,0) node[anchor=east] {1.83} -- (1,0) node[anchor=west] {1.84};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

**Scheme 1.31** Synthesis of $\beta$-ketonate gold(III) complexes.

The resulting chelates tend to be white crystalline solids with low melting points and a sharp odour. They are unstable towards light and require storage at sub-zero temperatures.\textsuperscript{(71)} It has
been proposed that the first step in the thermal decomposition of these complexes takes place by the opening of the chelate ring.\(^{74}\)

As mentioned above, the gold(III) \(O,O'\) coordinated \(\beta\)-diketonate complexes are volatile and have been used for chemical vapour deposition (CVD), particularly \textbf{1.84} which is available commercially.\(^{75-77}\) The decomposition of the compounds allows a convenient method to deposit gold species (cations and nanoparticles) onto surfaces for use in heterogeneous catalysis.\(^{78}\)

\subsection*{1.2.6 Complexes formed from \(S,S'\) donor ligands}

Gold(III) complexes which contain monoanionic \(S,S'\) bidentate ligands are mainly restricted to examples of dithiocarbamate compounds. The initial work on dithiocarbamate compounds came from the laboratory of van der Kerk where a range of different synthetic methods were employed to synthesise the cycloaurated complexes. The dihalide gold(III) complexes were synthesised by the reaction of a dimeric gold(I) \(N,N\)-bis-dialkyldithiocarbamate with a molar equivalent of either chlorine gas, thionyl chloride (to give the dichlorides), bromine, \(N\)-bromosuccinimide or \(N\)-bromophthalimide (to give the dibromides). For example, Scheme 1.32 depicts the reaction of the gold(I) \(N,N\)-bis-dibutylldithiocarbamate \textbf{1.85} with chlorine to yield dichloro gold(III) \(N,N\)-bis-dibutylldithiocarbamate \textbf{1.86}. Alternatively, the reaction of \(\text{AuCl}_3\text{py}\) with \(\text{NaS}_2\text{CNMe}_2\) in DMF produces the dichloro gold(III) \(N,N\)-bis-dimethyldithiocarbamate in 68\% yield.\(^{79}\)

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{scheme132.png}
\end{center}

\textbf{Scheme 1.32} Synthesis of dichloro gold(III) \(N,N\)-bis-dibutylldithiocarbamate \textbf{1.86} by the reaction of gold(I) \(N,N\)-bis-dibutylldithiocarbamate with chlorine.

The biological activity of dihalo-gold(III) dialkyldithiocarbamates has received a notable amount of attention lately, mainly because of the noted similarities of the complexes with
cisplatin. The methylsarcosine derivative 1.87 has an activity that is significantly higher, or at least comparable to cisplatin against human tumours (HL60 or HeLa cell lines).\(^{(80)}\) In addition, complexes 1.88 and 1.89 are much more cytotoxic in vitro than cisplatin towards human tumour cell lines.\(^{(81)}\)

![Scheme 1.33: Gold(III) dithiocarbamate complexes that are biologically active (X=Cl or Br).](image)

Synthesis of dialkyl gold(III) \(N,N\)-bis-dialklyldithiocarbamates was also investigated by van der Kerk. These can be synthesised by the reaction depicted in Scheme 1.34. In addition, the reaction of dihalo gold(III) dialklyldithiocarbamates (e.g. 1.86) with either an alkyl magnesium halide or dialkyl cadmium reagent also gave dialkyl gold(III) dialklyldithiocarbamates. The resulting gold(III) complexes were insoluble in water but soluble in most organic solvents. They show appreciable stability towards dilute acids and bases and mild reducing agents.\(^{(79)}\) It was later shown that the reaction of \([\text{Me}_2\text{AuI}]_2\) with sodium salts of dialkylldithiocarbamates is also a convenient synthetic method, the related xanthate complexes can also be synthesised by this method.\(^{(82)}\) Such compounds may have applications in CVD.\(^{(83)}\) Diaryl gold(III) dialkylldithiocarbamates, containing pentafluorophenyl groups were synthesised either by the reaction of the gold(III) dimer \([\text{Au(μ-Cl)}(\text{C}_6\text{F}_5)_2]_2\) with two equivalents of the sodium dialkylldithiocarbamate or by oxidising the dimeric gold(I) complex \([\text{Au(S}_2\text{CNEt}_2])_2\) with \(\text{Tl(C}_6\text{F}_5)_2\text{Cl}\).\(^{(84)}\)

![Scheme 1.34: Synthesis of dialkyl gold(III) \(N,N\)-bis-dialklyldithiocarbamate complexes.](image)
1.3 Scope of this Thesis

As mentioned above, there is still a large scope for the development of new cycloaurated complexes. Therefore, this thesis explores the synthesis, characterisation and properties of a range of new cycloaurated complexes. The cycloaurated iminophosphorane complexes described in Chapter Two contain the traditional C,N donor ligands. Chapter Three details the synthesis and properties of cycloaurated phosphine chalcogenide ligands which retain the carbon-gold sigma bond but also introduce either a sulfur or selenium as the neutral donor atom. Chapters Four and Five move away from carbon bonded organometallic compounds to nitrogen and sulfur based ligands respectively – as can be seen in the discussion above, little work has been done looking at the reactivity and properties of cycloaurated complexes with ligands other than C,N donor atoms. In Chapter Six the chemistry of the cationic complexes formed with the Kläui ligand are discussed. Finally, Chapter Seven evaluates the use of these new compounds as catalysts in the addition of methyl vinyl ketone (MVK) to 2-methylfuran.

1.4 References

CHAPTER TWO

The Cycloauration of Iminophosphorane Ligands

2.1 Introduction

Iminophosphoranes (or phosphorimines, \(R_3P=N-R'\)), are attractive substrates for cyclometallation reactions. Synthesis is relatively simple and allows various organic functional groups to be introduced easily on both the phosphorus and the nitrogen substituents, therefore tuning the ligand to have the desired steric and electronic properties. The presence of a phosphorus atom in the ligand and the resulting cyclometallated complexes means \(^{31}\)P NMR spectroscopy, a powerful spectroscopic probe, can be used in monitoring the reactions and also in subsequent characterisation of the cyclometallated species. A brief summary of the main synthetic routes to iminophosphoranes and their subsequent properties that relate to this work follows, however more comprehensive reviews are available on the topic.\(^1\), \(^2\) A discussion on cyclometallated complexes formed from iminophosphorane ligands is also included.

2.1.1 Synthesis of iminophosphorane ligands

**Staudinger reaction**

The first iminophosphorane, \(\text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{N-Ph}\), was synthesised by Staudinger and Meyer in 1919. Triphenylphosphine was reacted with phenylazide, and following the evolution of molecular nitrogen the iminophosphorane was obtained as a stable crystalline solid. The aptly named ‘Staudinger reaction’ has since been used to synthesise a number of different iminophosphoranes by varying the tertiary phosphine and/or azide used.
The Staudinger reaction is typically carried out in either diethyl ether or dichloromethane solvent. It is thought to proceed *via* a nucleophilic attack on the terminal nitrogen (Nγ) by the phosphine. The resulting linear phosphazide then dissociates to the iminophosphorane and dinitrogen *via* a four-centered transition state, as depicted in Scheme 2.1. Not surprisingly, electron withdrawing groups on the azide facilitate the reaction, as do electron donating groups on the phosphine. Sterically bulky groups on either the azide or the phosphine slow the reaction at the second step – the formation of the four-membered transition state.(1)

![Scheme 2.1](image)

**Scheme 2.1** Proposed mechanism for the Staudinger reaction, involving a four-membered transition state.

### Kirsanov reaction

The Kirsanov reaction between R₃PBr₂ and amines is also commonly used in the synthesis of iminophosphoranes and eliminates the use of potentially hazardous organic azides that are a required reagent in the Staudinger reaction. Horner and Oedinger initially discovered that when R₃PBr₂ is reacted with an arylamine and a base (typically triethylamine) an iminophosphorane is formed. Later, Zimmer and Singh continued this initial work to show that aliphatic amines yield the alkylaminophosphonium salts [R₃P-NH-R’]Br. These are simply converted to the iminophosphorane by the addition of a base, usually triethylamine (Scheme 2.2). The reaction is thought to proceed *via* a nucleophilic displacement of the bromide by the amine and again this reaction can lead to the synthesis of a wide variety of iminophosphoranes bearing different functional groups.

![Scheme 2.2](image)

**Scheme 2.2** Reaction scheme for the Kirsanov reaction.
Other synthetic methods

The synthetic pathways to iminophosphoranes are not limited to the Staudinger and Kirsanov reactions. Other, albeit less common, methods of synthesis are available but were not applicable in this work and thus will not be commented on. However, details of these syntheses can be found in reviews by either Johnson\(^{(1)}\) or Bestmann\(^{(2)}\).

2.1.2 Stability of iminophosphorane ligands

Unlike the isoelectronic phosphonium ylides (Ph\(_3\)P=CHR), the P=N bond in iminophosphoranes is relatively stable. The nitrogen atom is trigonally hybridised with one lone pair of electrons in an \(sp^2\) hybridised orbital and the other in a 2\(p\) orbital. This allows for overlap of a filled 2\(p\) orbital on the nitrogen with a vacant 3\(d_{xy}\) or 3\(d_{xz}\) orbital on the phosphorus thus giving a significant degree of \(\pi\)-\(d\) bonding.

Iminophosphoranes are basic and undergo hydrolysis to form phosphine oxides and amines, with the stability of the iminophosphorane largely dependent on the nitrogen substituent. The stability towards hydrolysis is greatest when the nitrogen is substituted with electron-rich or bulky groups \(e.g\). the following series increases in stability -\(N\)-alkyl < -\(N\)-aryl < -\(N\)-acyl. In addition, the \(N\)-acyl iminophosphoranes are resonance stabilised (Scheme 2.3).\(^{(3)}\) The stability of \(N\)-acyl iminophosphoranes over their \(N\)-aryl counterparts can be seen in the \(^{31}\)P chemical shifts – because of delocalisation of electron density through the PNCO framework the phosphorus is deshielded thus the chemical shift of \(N\)-acyl derivatives occurs approximately 20 ppm further downfield than \(N\)-aryl derivatives.

![Scheme 2.3](image-url)  

**Scheme 2.3** The proposed resonance forms of stabilised iminophosphoranes.
Because triarylphosphine-substituted iminophosphoranes are generally more stable than the tri-alkyl counterparts, the majority of research has been conducted with these derivatives – triphenylphosphine is often used as a starting material because it is commercially available and relatively inexpensive. In addition, the iminophosphoranes with $P$-aryl substituents tend to be crystalline materials, while alkyl substituents on the phosphine tend to result in liquids or oils.

2.1.3 Cyclometallated iminophosphoranes

Iminophosphoranes can coordinate to metals in a number of different modes; the classes directly related to this work are shown in Scheme 2.4. The simplest binding mode (A) is where the iminophosphorane nitrogen atom acts as a simple two-electron donor to the metal centre. A C-H bond on the nitrogen substituent may be activated by a metal centre giving the simple organometallic complex (B). The final binding mode, and the one that is most relevant to this work, is where the iminophosphorane ligand forms a cyclometallated complex via a carbon-metal sigma bond and (usually) a nitrogen-metal coordinate bond. Cyclometallated iminophosphoranes can be further subdivided into two classes, that is endo (where the $P=\text{N}$ bond is included in the cyclometallated ring (C)) or exo (the $P=\text{N}$ bond is outside the ring) type complexes.

![Scheme 2.4 Coordination modes of iminophosphorane ligands that relate to this work.](image)

The earliest report on cyclometallated iminophosphoranes came out of Alper’s laboratory in 1977. The cyclometallated complexes (2.1 a-d, Scheme 2.5) were directly synthesised in good yields by the room temperature reaction of aryl-substituted iminophosphoranes with Na$_2$PdCl$_4$.\textsuperscript{(4)} Interestingly, when the same synthetic procedure was followed with the
unsubstituted iminophosphorane Ph₃P=N-Ph only the simple coordination complex [PdCl₂{N(=PPh₃)Ph}₂] could be obtained. After Alper’s initial research there was a 20 year ‘lull’ before Leeson et al. reported on the direct ortho-metallation of Ph₃P=N-Ph by PhCH₂Mn(CO)₅ or PhCH₂Re(CO)₅ (2.2a,b, Scheme 2.5). Interestingly, the ortho-manganated complex (2.2a) showed thermochromic properties in solution.

More recently, Vicente et al. investigated the direct metallation reactions of N-aryl iminophosphoranes (2.3a and 2.3b). Direct mercuration of the iminophosphorane ligand with Hg(OAc)₂ (followed by a metathesis reaction with LiCl) gave the isomer 2.4 where the mercury is coordinated to the N-bonded phenyl ring (Scheme 2.6). This differs from the results that were seen by Zimmer where simple coordination compounds of the type [HgX₂{N(=PPh₃)Ar}] (X=Cl, Br, I) were isolated from the reaction of HgX₂ with N-aryl-substituted iminophosphoranes. Attempted symmetrisation and transmetallation reactions with gold, palladium and platinum were unsuccessful.
Scheme 2.6  Reaction of aryl-iminophosphoranes 2.3 (a R = Me; b R = OMe) with (Hg(OAc)$_2$ or Pd(OAc)$_2$) to give mercuration on the $N$-bonded phenyl ring (2.4) and palladiation on $P$-bonded aryl rings (2.5 a R = Me; b R = OMe) respectively.

Reaction of 2.3 a, b with Pd(OAc)$_2$ in THF (at room temperature) gave the *endo* isomers (2.5) with the palladium attached at the *ortho*-position of a $P$-bonded phenyl ring (Scheme 2.6) – the same result as Alper witnessed. Compound 2.6, with the palladium attached at the *ortho*-position of the $N$-bonded phenyl ring, was synthesised by oxidative addition of Pd(0) to the *ortho*-iodo complex. Because the nitrogen is no longer coordinated to the metal centre in this complex it was envisioned that it would show interesting chemistry – it was shown that isocyanides or alkynes can be inserted into the palladium-carbon bond to form five- or six-membered rings respectively (Scheme 2.7).\(^{(7)}\)
The Canadian laboratory of Stephan has looked at transmetallation reactions from ortho-lithiated iminophosphoranes, which in turn were first described by Stuckwisch. That is, reaction of 2.7 with main group (aluminium and gallium) metal complexes gives the ortho-metallated complexes 2.8, 2.9 and 2.10. In the case of the aluminium complexes, two chemically inseparable compounds 2.8 and 2.9 were formed. Careful crystal selection allowed 2.8 and 2.9 to be distinguished on the basis of X-ray crystallography. The gallium complex 2.10, also structurally characterised, is interesting as the N-bound phenyl ring and the metallated arene ring are co-planar. Furthermore, the palladium and nickel complexes 2.11, 2.12 and 2.13 were formed upon reaction of 2.7 with Pd(COD)Cl₂ (COD = cyclooctadiene) and NiBr₂(PPh₃)₂ respectively. Minor amounts of 2.11 (14%) were also formed in the reaction with Pd(COD)Cl₂. Rhodium and iridium complexes 2.14 and 2.15
could also be synthesised in a similar manner. Scheme 2.8 depicts the transmetallation reactions that were investigated.

Scheme 2.8 Reaction of ortho-lithiated iminophosphoranes 2.7 (a Ar=Ph; b Ar=2,6-Me₂C₆H₄; c Ar=3,5-Me₂C₆H₄; d Ar=2,6-iPr₂C₆H₄) with main-group and transition metal compounds to give aluminium 2.8 and 2.9, gallium 2.10, palladium 2.11 and 2.12, nickel 2.13, iridium 2.14 (Ar=Ph) and rhodium 2.15 (a Ar=Ph; b Ar=2,6-Me₂C₆H₄; c Ar=3,5-Me₂C₆H₄; d Ar=2,6-iPr₂C₆H₄) cyclometallated complexes.

In the last few years the majority of work involving organometallic iminophosphorane complexes, especially palladiated examples, has come out of the laboratory of the Spanish
group of Urriolabeitia. Initial work was conducted treating Ph₃P=N-Ph with Pd(OAc)₂ in refluxing dichloromethane (Scheme 2.9) – this was found to be a better method for the synthesis of 2.11 than the indirect method involving theortho-lithiated intermediate (Scheme 2.8) and Pd(COD)Cl₂ (96% compared with 14%). 2.11 could also be formed when Ph₃P=NPh was reacted with Li₂[PdCl₄] but it forms an inseparable mixture with the simple N-bonded coordination compound [PdCl₂{N(=PPh₃)Ph}]₂. Attempts at synthesis of the analogous platinum complex by reaction of Ph₃P=N-Ph with PtCl₂(NCPh)₂ or [Pt(μ-Cl)(η₃-2-MeC₃H₄)]₂ were unsuccessful. In a similar manner, treatment of the prochiral iminophosphorane Ph₂MeP=NPh with Pd(OAc)₂ gave metallation exclusively on a P-bonded phenyl ring, resulting in the phosphorus atom becoming a stereogenic centre.

![Scheme 2.9](image)

**Scheme 2.9** Synthetic route to the ortho-palladiated iminophosphorane 2.11 devised by Bielsa et al.

The reactivity of the tridentate iminophosphorane ligand 2.16 with platinum and palladium complexes was also investigated. As above, the palladiated complex 2.17 could be formed cleanly when 2.16 was reacted with Pd(OAc)₂ – when Li₂[PdCl₄] was used only an inseparable mixture of 2.17 and the N-bonded coordination compound could be produced. However, in this case the tridentate platinum iminophosphorane complex 2.18 could isolated when 2.16 was reacted with PtCl₂(NCPh)₂. It appears that harsher reaction conditions (refluxing 2-methoxyethanol) resulted in cyclometallated complexes – when the same reactions were carried out in less harsh conditions (i.e. at room temperature or at low reflux temperatures) only the N-bonded coordination compounds could be formed. Subsequent reactions indicated that both the bidentate and tridentate ligands coordinate strongly to the metal centres (Scheme 2.10).
The palladation reactions of other N-substituted iminophosphoranes capable of a tridentate binding mode have also been investigated. The reaction products of \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{N}-\text{R} \) (\( \text{R} = \text{CH}_2\text{COOMe}, \text{CH}_2\text{CONMe}_2, (\text{CH}_2)_2\text{SMe} \) and \( \text{CH}_2\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{N} \)) with \( \text{Pd(OAc)}_2 \) are represented in Scheme 2.11. As shown for 2.17 and 2.18, the resulting metallacycles show remarkable stability towards substitution with phosphine ligands.\(^{(14)}\)

**Scheme 2.10** Synthesis of platinum 2.17 and palladium 2.18 iminophosphoranes containing tridentate ligands.

**Scheme 2.11** Palladium iminophosphorane complexes formed from the ligands a) \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NCH}_2\text{COOMe} \), b) \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NCH}_2\text{CONMe}_2 \), c) \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{N(CH}_2)_2\text{SMe} \) and d) \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NCH}_2\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{N} \).
An interesting study was carried out on the palladation of the benzyl substituted iminophosphorane \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NCH}_2\text{Ph} \). Such a ligand has two sites for carbon \( sp^2 \) bond activation – either on the \( P \)-substituent (to form the \textit{endo} isomer) or the benzyl \( N \)-substituent (to form the \textit{exo} isomer) - in both cases five-membered palladacycles result. The reaction of \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NCH}_2\text{Ph} \) with \( \text{Pd(OAc)}_2 \) (followed by treatment with LiCl) showed selective metallation on the \( P \)-bonded phenyl ring to give the \textit{endo} isomer 2.19. However, because palladation of aromatic rings occurs by electrophilic substitution, \textit{exo} metallation would be expected to be the favoured pathway (the phosphorus deactivates the \( P \)-bonded phenyl rings by electron withdrawal). An examination of the \textit{endo} isomer indicated that the resulting cyclometallated ring contained a degree of “metalloaromaticity” – that is aromatic character due to the \( \text{C=C} \) and \( \text{P=N} \) double bonds and the \( d \) orbitals on the palladium. Such conjugation is not available in the \textit{exo} isomers. Hence it was proposed the site of palladation is controlled by two factors – the electron density on the aromatic rings and the degree of metalloaromaticity in the final products. The \textit{exo} isomer 2.20 could however be formed by oxidative addition of \( \text{Pd(0)} \) to the \textit{ortho}-brominated complex 2.21 (again followed by metathesis with LiCl).

![Scheme 2.12](image)

**Scheme 2.12** Synthesis of \textit{endo} 2.19 and \textit{exo} 2.20 palladated \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{N-CH}_2\text{Ph} \) and the interconversion between the two forms.
Heating the **exo** isomer *2.20* resulted in a conversion to the **endo** isomer *2.19* showing that the **endo** isomer is thermodynamically more stable – this process was not reversible (Scheme 2.12). In addition the **endo** isomer was kinetically more stable as no traces of the **exo** isomer could be detected in the synthesis of *2.19*. DFT calculations confirmed these observations.\(^\text{15}\)

Substitution of electron-donating groups onto both the phenyl and benzyl rings of the iminophosphoranes still resulted in **endo**-metallation indicating that the presence of metalloaromaticity in the final product dominates over both electronic and steric influences. Substitution of groups on the phosphorus (PPhMe\(_2\) compared with PPh\(_3\)) produced interesting results. The site of metallation was now temperature dependent – at low temperatures the reaction was under kinetic control and the **exo** isomer *2.22* was formed. At high temperatures the **endo** isomer *2.23* was formed due to thermodynamic control (Scheme 2.13), again DFT calculations were in accordance with experimental observations.\(^\text{15}\)

\[ \text{Scheme 2.13} \quad \text{Temperature dependent site-selective palladiation of the iminophosphorane PhMe}_2\text{P}=\text{N-CH}_2\text{Ph.} \]

Contrasting results are seen with experiments investigating the cyclopalladiation of the stabilised iminophosphorane Ph\(_3\)P=NC(O)Ph. For example, when Ph\(_3\)P=NC(O)Ph was reacted with Pd(OAc)\(_2\) the **exo** isomer *2.24* was obtained in favour of the **endo** isomer (Scheme 2.14), even though the **endo** isomer would be stabilised by a degree of metalloaromaticity. Aguilar *et al.* proposed that the regioselectivity was due to stabilisation of the N-acyl iminophosphorane. Considering the resonance forms shown in Scheme 2.3 – in a solvent such as dichloromethane the two zwitterionic forms will be the most prevalent. The
phosphorus atom would therefore support positive charge so the \( P \)-bonded phenyl rings would be deactivated towards electrophilic substitution by the palladium. Conversely, the phenacyl ring would be more electron rich thus activated towards electrophilic substitution by the palladium.\(^3\) The iminophosphoranes \( \text{MePh}_2\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Ph} \) and \( \text{R}_3\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Ph} \) (\( R = p\)-tolyl or \( m\)-tolyl) also showed metallaition on the phenacyl benzene ring even though these substitution patterns activate the \( P \)-bonded rings towards electrophilic substitution.\(^{16}\)

![Scheme 2.14](image)

Scheme 2.14 Regioselective cyclopalladation of \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Ph} \) to give the exo palladacycle 2.24.

The reactivity of the iminophosphorane \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NC(O)CH}_2\text{Ph} \) towards palladium was also investigated. This time the reaction with \( \text{Pd(OAc)}_2 \) in refluxing dichloromethane gave the simple coordination complex \( \text{trans-Cl}_2\text{Pd}\{\text{N}(=\text{PPh}_3)\text{C(O)CH}_2\text{Ph}\}_2 \). When \( \text{Li}_2[\text{PdCl}_4] \) was used the six-membered palladacycle 2.25 shown in Scheme 2.15 was obtained, somewhat surprisingly, in favour of the five-membered palladacycle that would have formed if metallaition had occurred on a \( P \)-bonded phenyl ring. However, metallaition of the \( P \)-bonded phenyl ring can be forced if the \( N \)-substituent contains heterocyclic units (derived from pyrrolidine or morpholine groups) that would require \( sp^3 \) C-H bond activation (Scheme 2.16).\(^{16}\)

![Scheme 2.15](image)

Scheme 2.15 Preferential formation of the six-membered exo palladacycle 2.25.
Scheme 2.16 Formation of endo palladacycles 2.26 (R = N-pyrrolidine, N-morpholine) by incorporating R groups with alkyl \( sp^3 \) carbon atoms.

Only recently a report on the palladiation of bis-iminophosphoranes which contain alkyl or aromatic linkers has appeared (Scheme 2.17). Reaction of the alkyl-linked ligands with \( \text{Pd(OAc)}_2 \) in dichloromethane resulted in tetra-nuclear chloride bridged species 2.27a – the bridged structure could be cleaved by reaction with \( \text{Tl(acac)} \). The endo isomer was obtained as palladiation at an \( sp^2 \) carbon is preferred over an \( sp^3 \) carbon. An analogous reaction with the aromatic linkers was unsuccessful – only when the reaction was carried out in refluxing glacial acetic acid were the products 2.27b and 2.27c obtained. The endo isomers were obtained exclusively – the reason given is that in acetic acid \( \text{Pd(OAc)}_2 \) acts as a nucleophile thus attacks at the electron poor (by resonance) \( P \)-bonded phenyl ring in preference to the electron rich aromatic spacer.\(^{(17)}\)

Scheme 2.17 Tetranuclear cyclometallated palladium iminophosphoranes 2.27 (a linker = A, X = Cl; b linker = B, X = OAc; c linker = C, X = OAc).
Although the majority of work has been carried out with palladium complexes, both gold(I) and gold(III) complexes have also been investigated. Brown et al. found that the reaction of the ortho-lithiated iminophosphorane \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}==\text{N-Ph} \) with \( \text{HgCl}_2 \) gave the ortho-mercurated compound 2.28a in good yields. The mercury is now attached to a \( P \)-bonded phenyl ring – the opposite isomer to that obtained by Vicente et al. with direct mercuration.(7) In this case, transmetallation with [Me\(_4\text{N}\)][AuCl\(_4\)] gave the cycloaurated complex 2.29a in good yields (Scheme 2.18).(18)

Independently of this work, Aguilar et al. conducted the same experiments but extended it to include the 3-methylphenyl \( N \)-substituted derivatives 2.28e and 2.29e. In addition, they also reported on a ‘greener’ method of synthesis that excluded the use of mercury compounds. That is, reaction of the ortho-lithiated intermediates 2.7a and 2.7e with \( \text{AuCl(PPh}_3\text{)} \) gave the gold(I) complexes 2.30a and 2.30e. A transmetallation reaction with [Me\(_4\text{N}\)][AuCl\(_4\)] was used to synthesise the cyclometallated gold(III) complexes 2.29a and 2.29e (Scheme 2.18).(19)
In addition, Aguilar et al. demonstrated that when the stabilised iminophosphoranes Ph₃P=NC(O)R (R = o-tolyl, 2-OMeC₆H₄ or 2-BrC₆H₄) were reacted with K[AuCl₄] (Scheme 2.19) only the N-coordinated adducts 2.31 could be obtained. Heating of these adducts did not result in cycloauration.

Scheme 2.19 Reaction of stabilised iminophosphoranes with K[AuCl₄] to form the simple coordination complexes 2.31 (a R = 2-Me; b R = 4-OMe; c R = 2-Br).

2.1.4 Scope of this work
As mentioned above, work done by Brown (Section 2.1.3) demonstrated that the simple iminophosphorane Ph₃P=N-Ph is capable of forming cycloaurated complexes. The following work expands on the initial investigations and includes the synthesis of cycloaurated (simple) iminophosphoranes with N-substituents other than a phenyl group. The cycloauration of the stabilised iminophosphorane (to give both the endo and exo isomers) Ph₃P=NC(O)Ph is also discussed. In addition, the reactivity and biological activity of the cycloaurated iminophosphoranes is evaluated. The catalytic activity of the complexes is discussed separately in Chapter 7.

2.2 Results and Discussion

2.2.1 Synthesis of simple ortho-mercurated and cycloaurated iminophosphorane complexes
The Kirsanov reaction (Section 2.1.1) was used to synthesise the alkylaminophosphonium salts ([R₃P-NH-R']Br). Subsequent deprotonation of these salts by addition of a base yielded the neutral iminophosphorane ligands. Alternatively, the use of arylamines in the synthesis
gave the iminophosphorane ligand directly. Previously Lee and Singer had reported that the deprotonation of aminophosphonium salts takes place readily and in high yields using KOH as the base. However in this work the synthetic yields were often lower than reported and in addition the resulting iminophosphoranes were unstable towards hydrolysis, especially when the N-bonded subsituent was -CHMePh.

Boubekeur et al. have recently shown that reaction of alkylaminophosphonium salts with two equivalents of n-butyllithium leads to deprotonatation of the phosphonium salt and ortho-lithiation of the resulting iminophosphorane in one step. This methodology was adapted to synthesise ortho-mercured iminophosphoranes in a one-pot reaction without the need to isolate the potentially unstable alkyliminophosphorane ligand. Thus, when the alkylaminophosphonium bromide salts were reacted with two equivalents of n-butyllithium followed by HgCl₂, the ortho-mercured bromide compounds were isolated in good yields. In contrast, the aryliminophosphorane ligands were appreciably more stable. They could be isolated in good yields then reacted with PhLi followed by HgCl₂, as previously described, to give the ortho-mercured compounds, also in good yields.

As previously mentioned in Section 2.1.3, Vicente et al. demonstrated that direct mercuration of Ph₃P=N-C₆H₄-Me gave the ortho-mercured compound with the mercury bound to the p-tolyl ring, the wrong isomer for subsequent cycloauration. The use of Ph₃P=N-Bu′ eliminates the possibility of metallation on the N-substituent and when reacted directly with Hg(OAc)₂ in THF it appears that mercuration takes place in the desired position – on the ortho position of a P-bonded phenyl ring. However, yields were low compared with the synthetic route that proceeds via the ortho-lithiated intermediate, and appreciable decomposition of the ligand to [Ph₃P-NH-Bu′]⁺ and Ph₃P=O was observed (³¹P NMR) during the reaction.

Transmetallation of either the ortho-mercured chloride or bromide species with [Me₄N][AuCl₄] produced the cycloaurated complexes in good yields. It is worthy of note that in all cases the gold(III) dichloride was formed and no evidence of mono- or di-brominated compounds are seen, even when the mercury bromide iminophosphoranes are used. Scheme
2.20 shows the synthetic methods used in the synthesis of both ortho-mercurated and cycloaurated iminophosphoranes.

Using the above methodology, the ortho-mercurated compounds 2.28d,f – 2.34b,c and the cycloaurated complexes 2.29b-d,f were successfully synthesised. With the exception of 2.29c which decomposed slowly over time, all the compounds (including the racemic mixture 2.29b) appear to be stable towards air and light. The compounds were analysed by mass spectrometry, IR, NMR spectroscopy and microelemental analysis. In addition, an X-ray structure determination of the chiral complex 2.29c was carried out.

2.2.2 X-ray crystal structure of (2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)Ph₂P=N-(S)CHMePh, 2.29c
In order to fully characterise (2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)Ph₂P=N-(S)CHMePh 2.29c and compare it with the N-aryl complex 2.29a, an X-ray crystal structure determination was carried out. Figure 2.1 shows the structure of the complex, and the atom labelling scheme while Table 2.1 gives important bond parameters. Full structural parameters including anisotropic displacement
parameters and atomic coordinates can be found on the enclosed CD. The crystal is a rare example of a molecule crystallised in the P1 space group with Z = 1.

The structure is as expected; the gold atom is essentially square planar with C(12) showing the greatest deviation from the coordination plane [defined by C(12), N(1), Au(1), Cl(1) and Cl(2)]. Because of the greater trans influence of the aryl carbon, the Au-Cl(1) bond length is greater than Au-Cl(2) bond length trans to the nitrogen. The metallacyclic ring made up of Au(1), N(1), P(1), C(11) and C(12) is significantly puckered, as in the previously characterised cycloaurated iminophosphorane 2.29a.\(^{(18)}\) Again, the nitrogen atom shows the greatest deviation [0.288(5) Å above the plane]. The bond lengths and angles in 2.29c are
also very comparable with those in the \textit{N}-phenyl complex 2.29a. However, the Au-N bond length is longer in 2.29c than in 2.29a [2.072(10) Å compared with 2.034(4) Å] and the Au-Cl bond \textit{trans} to the nitrogen is slightly shorter in 2.29c than in 2.29a [2.297(3) Å compared to 2.289(1) Å]. These data indicate that an aryl substituent on the nitrogen results in the nitrogen donor having a lower \textit{trans} influence than if an alkyl substituent was present on the nitrogen.

Table 2.1  Selected structural parameters for (2-AuCl\textsubscript{2}C\textsubscript{6}H\textsubscript{4})Ph\textsubscript{2}P=N-(\textit{S})-CHMePh, 2.29c, with esds in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Lengths (Å)</th>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Angles (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>2.371(2)</td>
<td>Cl(1) – Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>89.70(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>2.297(3)</td>
<td>N(1) – Au(1) – C(12)</td>
<td>85.1(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>2.072(10)</td>
<td>C(12) – Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>92.4(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – C(12)</td>
<td>2.045(8)</td>
<td>N(1) – Au(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>93.0(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>1.615(10)</td>
<td>N(1) – P(1) – C(11)</td>
<td>101.9(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – C(11)</td>
<td>1.790(6)</td>
<td>P(1) – N(1) – C(41)</td>
<td>131.4(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N(1) – C(41)</td>
<td>1.473(12)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2.3 Spectroscopic and mass spectrometric characterisation of simple \textit{ortho}-mercurated and cycloaurated iminophosphoranes

NMR spectroscopy

Because of the presence of multiple inequivalent phenyl rings and coupling to phosphorus in the \textit{ortho}-mercurated and cycloaurated complexes, both the \textsuperscript{1}H and \textsuperscript{13}C NMR spectra are complex and difficult to fully interpret. \textsuperscript{31}P{\textsuperscript{1}H} NMR remains the most useful experiment, and Figure 2.2 demonstrates this nicely. Conversion of the aminophosphonium salt 2.32 to the neutral iminophosphorane 2.33 results in the phosphorus becoming more shielded and an upfield shift of approximately 40 ppm is seen. A small shift is seen after \textit{ortho}-mercuration and the spectra now contain \textsuperscript{199}Hg satellite peaks with \textsuperscript{3}J_{Hg-P} coupling averaging 330 Hz. Upon transmetallation to the cycloaurated complexes, there is a significant downfield shift in the signal of approximately 40 ppm, consistent with the formation and inclusion of the phosphorus in a five-membered ring.\textsuperscript{(22)}
IR Spectroscopy

The IR spectra show a decrease in wavenumber for the P=N stretch when moving from the free ligands to the ortho-mercurated complexes and on to the cycloaurated complexes. For example, Ph₃P=NBu' has a P=N stretch at 1280 cm⁻¹ which decreases to 1223 cm⁻¹ in 2.28f and to 1183 cm⁻¹ in 2.29f. This is presumably because electron density is being pulled from the P=N bond onto the metal centre through the coordinating nitrogen.
ESI-Mass spectrometry

The ESI-MS of the ortho-mercurated complexes (2.34b,c and 2.28d,f) all show strong [M+H]$^+$ ions which can easily be identified by the characteristic isotope pattern of mercury. The spectrum of 2.28f also indicated the presence of the diarylmercury complex 2-Hg\{(C₆H₄)Ph₂P=NBu₅\}_₂ however there was no evidence of this compound in the $^{31}$P\{¹H\} NMR or microelemental analysis. This form of ionisation suggests that there is only a weak N-Hg interaction as the nitrogen is available for protonation.

In contrast, the primary route of ionisation for the cycloaurated complexes appears to be loss of a chloride ligand to give the ions [M-Cl]$^+$. As previously observed, addition of a small amount of highly coordinating pyridine produces the charged species [M-Cl+py]$^+$. Interestingly, the complex 2.29f also shows the ion [M+Me₄N]$^+$ with the cation presumably present due to the use of [Me₄N][AuCl₄] and [Me₄N]Cl in the synthesis. No evidence of [Me₄N]$^+$ is observed in NMR spectra, however this type of adduct is also seen as the predominant gold species when monitoring the progression of the transmetallation reaction by ESI-MS.

2.2.4 Reactivity of simple cycloaurated iminophosphorane complexes with dianionic ligands

The chloride ligands on C,N cyclometallated Au(III) compounds can be readily replaced by dianionic ligands such as catecholate and thiosalicylate, forming new five- and six-membered chelate rings respectively. The iminophosphorane complexes 2.29a and 2.29f show analogous behaviour and when reacted with either catechol or thiosalicylic acid in methanol with excess trimethylamine, the cycloaurated complexes 2.35 and 2.36 can easily be isolated in high yields by addition of water to the reaction mixture. NMR spectroscopy, ESI mass spectrometry and elemental microanalysis confirm the formulation. Compound 2.35f appears to be present with one molecule of water as microanalysis of two independent samples gives a composition which is in agreement with the proposed formula.
The $^{31}\text{P}_{\text{1H}}$ NMR spectra of the new cycloaurated derivatives show only a slight difference in chemical shift from the original dichloride species. The chemical shift of 2.29a is 65.5 ppm whereas 2.35a and 2.36a have shifts of 60.9 and 54.1 ppm respectively. Likewise, the dichloride 2.29f has a shift of 46.1 ppm, which moves slightly to 55.7 and 43.2 ppm in 2.35f and 2.36f respectively. Such data indicate that the original cycloaurated iminophosphorane ring remains intact upon derivatisation; if the ring was opened an upfield shift in the $^{31}\text{P}_{\text{1H}}$ spectrum would be expected.\(^{(22)}\)

Both the catecholate and thiosalicylate derivatives show clean mass spectra and, with the exception of 2.36a, have strong parent ions of the type [M+H]$^+$ or [M+Na]$^+$ when the sample is doped with NaCl. However for the complex 2.36a, the parent ion is [2-Au({C}_{6}{H}_{4})Ph_{2}P=NPh]$_2$$^+$, even when the sample is doped with NaCl. The presence of this type of diarylgold species in ESI-MS spectra of thiosalicylate complexes has been seen previously.\(^{(27)}\)

To confirm the geometry of the thiosalicylate complexes, an X-ray crystal structure of 2.36f was carried out. Figure 2.3 shows the molecular structure with the atom labelling scheme,
and Table 2.2 gives selected bond lengths and angles. A full list of structural parameters can be found on the supplementary CD. As with other gold(III) thiosalicylate complexes\(^{(25-27)}\) the ligand is coordinated to the gold with the two highest \textit{trans} influence donors (aryl carbon and thiolate sulfur) mutually \textit{cis} to each other. The geometry around the gold is square planar with the largest deviation from the N(1), C(12), Au(1), S(1) and O(2) plane being for C(12), which sits 0.1620(7) Å below the plane. The fold angle between the Au coordination plane [defined by Au(1), S(1) and O(2)] and the plane of the thiosalicylate ligand (excluding the oxygen atoms) is 43.34(4)°, which falls in the range of 30.1(8)° (\textit{2.37}) and 59.6° (\textit{2.38a}) previously seen in gold(III) thiosalicylate systems.\(^{(25-27)}\) The bite angle of the thiosalicylate ligand is 91.46(4)°, comparable to those seen in \textit{2.38a} and \textit{2.38b} [89.82(8)° and 90.1(2)° respectively]. The five-membered ring created by the cycloaurated iminophosphorane is also puckered with the greatest deviations for N(1) (0.3226(7) Å above the plane) and P(1) (0.2788(7) Å below the plane). The puckering of the thiosalicylate and the iminophosphorane rings can clearly be seen in Figure 2.4. The fold angle between the gold coordination plane and that of the thiosalicylate ring is 43.3°, towards the lower end of the range found for a series of Pt(II) thiosalicylate complexes.\(^{(28)}\)

\[\text{Scheme 2.22} \] Previous cycloaurated thiosalicylate complexes \textit{2.37} and \textit{2.38} (a \(R = \text{Me}\); \(b \ R = \text{H}\)).
Figure 2.3  Molecular diagram of 2.36f, showing the atom numbering scheme. Hydrogen atoms are omitted for clarity, thermal ellipsoids are shown at the 50% probability level.

Figure 2.4  Molecular diagram of 2.36f, showing the fold angle of the thiosalicylate ligand and puckering of the iminophosphorane ring. For clarity, only the \textit{ipso} carbons of the uncoordinated phenyl rings [C(21) and C(31)] and the tertiary carbon of the Bu' group C(41) are shown. Thermal ellipsoids are shown at the 50% probability level.
Table 2.2  Selected structural parameters for 2.36f, with esds in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Lengths (Å)</th>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Angles (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N(1) – Au(1)</td>
<td>2.1196(13)</td>
<td>N(1) – Au(1) – C(12)</td>
<td>85.90(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(12) – Au(1)</td>
<td>2.0194(16)</td>
<td>O(2) – Au(1) – S(1)</td>
<td>91.46(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O(2) – Au(1)</td>
<td>2.0676(13)</td>
<td>C(3) – S(1) – Au(1)</td>
<td>103.08(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S(1) – C(3)</td>
<td>1.7618(17)</td>
<td>O(1) – C(1) – O(2)</td>
<td>121.52(17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O(1) – C(1)</td>
<td>1.226(2)</td>
<td>O(1) – C(1) – C(2)</td>
<td>119.45(15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O(2) – C(1)</td>
<td>1.306(2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2.5  Reactivity of simple cycloaurated iminophosphoranes with phosphines

As described in Chapter One (section 1.2.1), reaction of C,N cyclometallated Au(III) dichloride complexes with PPh₃ gives an indication of the relative strength of the N-Au coordinate bond. If the bond is strong, then a chloride ion will be displaced to give a cationic complex. Alternatively, if the N-Au bond is weaker it will be cleaved (with loss of the metallocyclic ring) and coordination of the phosphine will give a neutral phosphine complex.(29)

To assess the strength of the Au-N bond in Au(III) iminophosphoranes, 2.29a was reacted with one molar equivalent of PPh₃ together with NH₄PF₆ in dichloromethane, producing the compound 2.39 where the PPh₃ has displaced the chloride ligand (Scheme 2.23). The products were initially characterised by ESI-MS and ³¹P{¹H} NMR. The ³¹P{¹H} NMR shows the expected two signals at 60.6 and 41.0 ppm in a 1:1 ratio. The first arises from the iminophosphorane, and is only slightly shifted from that of the parent dichloride (65.5 ppm) indicating that the phosphorus is still present in a ring. This was unambiguously confirmed by an X-ray crystal structure determination.

The molecular structure of the cation of 2.39 is shown in Figure 2.5, and selected bond parameters are presented in Table 2.3. The geometry around the gold atom is essentially square planar and N(1) shows the greatest deviation [0.113(3) Å] from the coordination plane.
Scheme 2.23 Reaction of the cycloaurated iminophosphorane 2.29a with PPh3.

Figure 2.5 Molecular diagram of [(2-AuCl(PPh3)C6H4)Ph2P=NPh]+. Hydrogen atoms are omitted for clarity and thermal ellipsoids are shown at the 30% probability level.

The X-ray crystal structure shows that the phosphine is coordinated *trans* to the nitrogen, thus placing the two softest ligands (the phosphine and aryl groups) mutually *cis* to each other, giving the most thermodynamically stable configuration. In addition this configuration is such that steric interactions between the bulky PPh3 and the N-aryl group are minimised. This
transphobic nature is also observed in other phosphine substituted Au(III) cationic complexes, and the Au-P bond lengths are comparable with those previously seen. Upon substitution of the chloride with the bulky phosphine group the bond angle between the two monodentate ligands has increased [from 90.70(4)° in 2.29a to 92.88(17)° in 2.39] however the change in the bite angle of the iminophosphorane ligand [84.86(17) to 84.0(2)°] is barely noticeable. The ligand remains significantly puckered, with N(1) and P(1) showing the greatest deviation from the mean plane of the ring [defined by N(1), P(1), Au(1), C(11) and C(12)].

### Table 2.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Lengths (Å)</th>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Angles (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>2.3463(11)</td>
<td>N(1) – Au(1) – C(12)</td>
<td>84.0(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – P(2)</td>
<td>2.30303(12)</td>
<td>C(12) – Au(1) – P(2)</td>
<td>92.88(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – C(12)</td>
<td>2.057(5)</td>
<td>P(2) – Au(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>91.11(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>2.079(5)</td>
<td>Cl(1) – Au(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>92.26(13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>1.620(6)</td>
<td>Au(1) – N(1) – P(1)</td>
<td>108.3(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N(1) – C(41)</td>
<td>1.419(7)</td>
<td>P(1) – N(1) – C(41)</td>
<td>124.9(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(11)-C(12)</td>
<td>1.401(9)</td>
<td>N(1) – P(1) – C(11)</td>
<td>100.6(3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2.2.6 Attempted displacement of the N-donor ligand in simple cycloaurated iminophosphoranes

In order to evaluate our hypothesis that displacement of the N-donor would result in a significant upfield shift in the $^{31}$P NMR spectra attempts were made to displace the nitrogen. Previously this has been achieved with gold(III) complexes by replacement of the relatively weakly bound chloride ligands with stronger cyanide$^{34}$ or dithiocarbamate$^{34, 35}$ ligands (see Chapter One).

When 2.29a was reacted with excess KCN the anion [(2-(CN)$_3$AuC$_6$H$_4$)Ph$_2$P=NPh]$^-$ was observed in the ESI mass spectrum, and an unexpected new peak at 69.5 ppm in the $^{31}$P{$^1$H}
is observed. However, isolation and microanalysis of this complex as a white solid produced microelemental data completely inconsistent with the expected formulation.

When 2.29a was reacted with a molar equivalent of NaS₂CNEt₂ and NH₄PF₆ in dichloromethane the complex 2.40 was obtained as a yellow solid. The analogous reaction with two equivalents of NaS₂CNEt₂ also gave a yellow complex which was identical to 2.40 (on the basis of ¹H and ³¹P{¹H} NMR experiments). No evidence of displacement of the nitrogen donor was observed. These observations indicate that the iminophosphorane complexes contain a robust cyclometallated ring.

![Scheme 2.24 Reaction of the cycloaurated iminophosphorane 2.29a with sodium diethylidithiocarbamate](image)

**2.2.7 Synthesis of stabilised ortho-mercurated and cycloaurated iminophosphoranes**

The stabilised iminophosphorane Ph₃P=NC(O)Ph was synthesised (by Miss Rachael Linklater) from Ph₃P and N₃C(O)Ph using the conventional Staudinger reaction. Ph₃P=NC(O)Bu' was synthesised by a modified version of the same reaction. Frøyen had previously demonstrated that iminophosphoranes could conveniently be synthesised by the one pot reaction between an acid chloride, sodium azide and triphenylphospine. We have found that exchanging acid chloride for an anhydride gives the same product however the reaction times are longer due to the anhydride being less reactive than the acid chloride. The new stabilised iminophosphorane Ph₃P=NC(O)Bu' is an air stable crystalline white solid. The ³¹P{¹H} NMR and IR data [ν(P=N) and ν(C=O)] are consistent with other stabilised iminophosphoranes.
Scheme 2.25 Synthesis of the stabilised iminophosphoranes a) Ph$_3$P=NC(O)Ph and b) Ph$_3$P=NC(O)Bu'.

The cycloauration of stabilised iminophosphoranes (to give either the *endo* or *exo* compound) is an interesting synthetic problem. As mentioned in the introduction, Aguilar *et al.* have already shown that the reaction of Ph$_3$P=NC(O)Ph with K[AuCl$_4$] gives the coordination compound where the nitrogen of the iminophosphorane ligand acts as a simple two electron donor to the gold centre (Scheme 2.19).\(^{(19)}\) Transmetallation from the corresponding *ortho*-mercurated complex is therefore the only viable option. However, the presence of the carbonyl group on the ligand means that synthesis of the *ortho*-mercurated compound via the *ortho*-lithiated compound (*i.e.* the method used for the synthesis of simple *ortho*-mercurated iminophosphoranes) is no longer a viable option. Unfortunately, attempts at direct mercuration of the ligand, with Hg(OAc)$_2$ in refluxing THF, were also unsuccessful. It is possible that the use of a stronger mercurating agent [*e.g.* Hg(ClO$_4$)$_2$ or Hg(OTf)$_2$] could produce the organomercury complex, however this was not attempted.

Cooney *et al.* have previously demonstrated that the reaction of *ortho*-manganated acetophenone with HgCl$_2$ gives the *ortho*-mercurated compound in good yields. *Ortho*-mercurated acetophenone can not be synthesised by conventional methods – again the presence of a carbonyl group excludes the use of organolithium reagents and direct mercuration occurs at the methyl carbon due to keto-enol tautomerisation.\(^{(38)}\) Therefore *ortho*-manganation of the ligand Ph$_3$P=NC(O)Ph may provide an entry point to the *ortho*-mercurated derivative.
As discussed earlier, the simple iminophosphorane \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{N-Ph} \) undergoes ortho-metallation with \( \text{PhCH}_2\text{Mn(CO)}_5 \) to give the manganated compound 2.2a (Scheme 2.5).\(^6\) Linklater investigated the ortho-manganation of the stabilised iminophosphorane \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Ph} \) and found that manganation occurred at the ortho-position of the \( N \)-bonded phenyl ring to give the exo isomer 2.41.\(^{36}\) The geometry was initially assigned by NMR and IR spectroscopy. The \( ^{31}\text{P}\{^1\text{H}\} \) NMR spectrum had a single peak at 23.5 ppm, only slightly shifted from the ligand (21.3 ppm). This pointed strongly towards ortho-metallation on the \( N \)-bonded substituent. Presumably the \( ^{31}\text{P} \) chemical shift of the endo isomer would be further downfield because the phosphorus would be in a five-membered ring.\(^{22}\) The \( ^{13}\text{C}\{^1\text{H}\} \) spectrum also had the correct number of signals for metallation of the \( N \)-bonded substituent. The carbonyl carbon of 2.41 appears at 189.0 ppm – this is slightly different to the free ligand (\( \delta \) 176.4 ppm) and suggests that the oxygen atom is coordinated to the manganese. The \( \text{C=O} \) stretching peak in the IR spectrum of the ortho-manganated compound 2.41 occurs at 1488 cm\(^{-1}\). When this is compared to the value for the carbonyl stretch in the uncoordinated ligand (1595 cm\(^{-1}\)) it also suggests that the oxygen atom is acting as a donor to the manganese. The mechanism of ortho-manganation is not well understood so it is unclear why metallation occurs on the \( N \)-acyl ring with the oxygen atom acting as the neutral donor. However the reaction of \( N,N \)-dialkylbenzamides with \( \text{PhCH}_2\text{Mn(CO)}_5 \) also gives the isomer with the oxygen coordinated to the manganese.\(^{39}\)

Unambiguous assignment of 2.41 was achieved by an X-ray crystal structure. As the IR and NMR spectroscopic data suggested, the manganese is attached in the ortho position of the \( N \)-bonded phenacyl ring with the carbonyl oxygen acting as a neutral donor. The molecular structure is shown in Figure 2.6.\(^{36}\)
Figure 2.6 Molecular structure of \((2\text{-Mn(CO)}_4\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)\text{C(O)N=PPh}_3\), 2.41. Hydrogen atoms have been excluded for clarity. Thermal ellipsoids are shown at the 50% probability level.

As anticipated, the reaction of 2.41 with HgCl₂ in refluxing methanol gives the ortho-mercurated complex 2.42 in a good yield. A transmetallation reaction analogous to that used with the simple iminophosphoranes gives the exo-cycloaurated complex 2.43, also in good yields. Scheme 2.26 depicts the synthetic route to 2.43. Interestingly, the transmetallation reaction from 2.42 to 2.43 took two days – the corresponding reaction for the simple iminophosphorane only took one. Presumably this is due to the neighbouring carbonyl group pulling electron density away from the nitrogen atom.
Scheme 2.26 Synthesis of exo-cyclometallated complexes from the stabilised iminophosphorane Ph3P=NC(O)Ph.

Bennett et al. have previously derived a synthetic route to the diaryl-mercury(II) compound 2.44. They subsequently demonstrated that the phosphine groups act in a similar way to simple tertiary phosphines. That is, reaction with H2O2 or sulfur led to the phosphine oxide or sulfide respectively and reaction with BH3.SMe2 gave the borane complex.(40) When 2.44 was reacted with two equivalents of N3C(O)Ph, as per the Staudinger reaction, the iminophosphorane 2.45 was obtained. The reaction however took longer than expected - typically when a phosphine is added to the azide evolution of nitrogen can be seen immediately. When the mechanism of the Staudinger reaction is considered (see Scheme 2.1) it is not surprising that the reaction was sluggish – sterically bulky groups hinder the formation of the four-membered transition state. Again, a transmetallation reaction gave endo-cycloaurated compound 2.46, once more the reaction takes longer than for the simple iminophosphoranes discussed in Section 2.2.1. The synthetic scheme is depicted below (Scheme 2.27).
When the ligand \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Bu} \) was reacted with \( \text{PhCH}_2\text{Mn(CO)}_5 \) in refluxing heptane no reaction occurred, even after 8 hours. In addition, reaction of \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Ph} \) with two equivalents of \( \text{PhCH}_2\text{Mn(CO)}_5 \), in an attempt to make the di-cyclomanganted complex, only afforded the mononuclear compound 2.41.\(^{(36)}\) It appears that the \( P \)-bonded phenyl rings of the stabilised iminophosphoranes are inert towards reaction with manganese.

\[ \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Ph} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Bu} \]

**Scheme 2.28** Attempts to ortho-manganate the stabilised iminophosphoranes a) \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Ph} \) and b) \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Bu} \) on the \( P \)-bonded phenyl ring.

### 2.2.8 X-ray crystal structures of (2-HgCl\( \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \))C(O)N=PPh\(_3\), 2.42, (2-AuCl\(_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \))C(O)N=PPh\(_3\), 2.43 and (2-AuCl\(_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \))Ph\(_2\)P=NC(O)Ph, 2.46

In order to confirm the structures of the 2.42, 2.43 and 2.46 X-ray crystallography was used. The molecular structures of 2.42, 2.43 and 2.46 are shown in Figures 2.7, 2.8 and 2.9 respectively and important structural parameters are presented in Tables 2.4, 2.5 and 2.6. Full lists of structural data, atomic coordinates and anisotropic displacement parameters can be located on the supplementary CD.

**X-ray crystal structure of (2-HgCl\( \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \))C(O)N=PPh\(_3\), 2.42**

Interestingly, as with the manganese example, it is the oxygen that is interacting with the metal centre. As expected, the coordination around the mercury shows only a slight deviation
from linearity [the C(2)–Hg(1)–C(1) angle is 176.24(6)°]. In this example, the preference for the oxygen atom may be because of steric reasons. The molecules of the mercury complex are packed together so that there are weak intermolecular interactions (3.143 Å) between the metal and a chlorine atom of a neighbouring molecule – in essence a dimeric structure is present in the solid state. If however there was an interaction between the nitrogen and the mercury the bulky triphenylphosphine group would twist around and sit over the metal centre and “clash” with the phenacyl phenyl ring on the adjacent molecule.

Although the mercury–oxygen interaction is weak [the Hg(1)–O(1) bond length is 2.6281(16) Å] it appears that it is keeping the core of the molecule co-planar. Indeed the greatest deviations from the metallacyclic ring are C(1) and C(2) [which sit 0.0254(15) Å and
0.0338(13) Å above and below the plane of the ring respectively. The PNCO network is also essentially planar but tilted upward at an angle of 6.84(17)° to the metallacyclic ring meaning that the molecule has a slight bow in it. This differs from the free ligand where the phenyl ring is twisted 11.49° from the planar PNCO moiety. Like the uncoordinated ligand the triphenylphosphine groups have a propeller-like arrangement.\(^{(41)}\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Lengths (Å)</th>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Angles (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>1.620(2)</td>
<td>C(2) – Hg(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>176.24(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N(1) – C(7)</td>
<td>1.346(3)</td>
<td>Hg(1) – C(2) – C(1)</td>
<td>118.83(17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(7) – O(1)</td>
<td>1.250(3)</td>
<td>C(2) – C(1) – C(7)</td>
<td>120.9(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(7) – C(1)</td>
<td>1.515(3)</td>
<td>C(1) – C(7) – O(1)</td>
<td>119.80(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(1) – C(2)</td>
<td>1.398(3)</td>
<td>C(7) – O(1) – Hg(1)</td>
<td>106.40(14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(2) – Hg(1)</td>
<td>2.063(2)</td>
<td>C(1) – C(7) – N(1)</td>
<td>114.86(19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hg(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>2.3293(6)</td>
<td>C(7) – N(1) – P(1)</td>
<td>118.37(16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hg(1) --- O(1)</td>
<td>2.6281(16)</td>
<td>N(1) – C(7) – O(1)</td>
<td>125.3(2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is a slight lengthening of the C=O bond upon coordination to the mercury [from 1.2448(3) Å to 1.250(3) Å] which is to be expected if there is a weak interaction between the oxygen atom and the mercury. In addition, both the P=N and N-C bonds have become shorter. Finally, there is only a small change in the C(1)-C(7)-O(1) angle after metallation [119.80(19)° in 2.42 compared with 119.39° in the ligand].

**X-ray crystal structure of (2-AuCl\(_2\)C\(_6\)H\(_4\))C(O)N=PPh\(_3\), 2.43**

As expected, the nitrogen of the iminophosphorane is coordinated to the gold centre. This preference for coordination of the softer nitrogen to the metal centre was also observed in the analogous palladium(II) complex.\(^{(3)}\) Like the palladium complex the metallacyclic ring is not planar, instead it has an envelope conformation with the gold atom sitting 0.528(5) Å above the ring. Because of this, the PNCO network is no longer planar and has a twist of 19.11°.
Figure 2.8 Molecular structure of (2-AuCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)C(O)N=PPh$_3$ 2.43 showing the atom numbering scheme. The dichloromethane solvent and hydrogen atoms have been omitted for clarity. Thermal ellipsoids are shown at the 50% probability level.

Like the other examples of exo metallated iminophosphoranes the dangling triphenylphosphine moiety has phenyl groups which are arranged in a propeller-like fashion. Upon coordination to the gold there is an increase in both the P=N and N-C bond lengths when compared to the uncoordinated ligand [P=N: 1.6258(3) Å in ligand, 1.655(3) Å in 2.43; N-C: 1.3530(4) Å in ligand, 1.401(4) Å in 2.43]. In addition the C=O bond length has decreased [from 1.2448(3) Å in the ligand to 1.218(4) Å in the cycloaurated complex] – a similar change in bond lengths was observed in the palladium complex.
Table 2.5  Selected bond lengths (Å) and angles (°) for the complex 2.43, with esds in parenthesis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Lengths (Å)</th>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Angles (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>1.655(3)</td>
<td>Cl(1) – Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>90.18(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N(1) – C(7)</td>
<td>1.401(4)</td>
<td>Cl(2) – Au(1) – C(2)</td>
<td>93.24(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(7) – O(1)</td>
<td>1.218(4)</td>
<td>C(2) – Au(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>80.90(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(7) – C(1)</td>
<td>1.481(4)</td>
<td>N(1) – Au(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>95.55(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(1) – C(2)</td>
<td>1.395(4)</td>
<td>Au(1) – C(2) – C(1)</td>
<td>111.7(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(2) – Au(1)</td>
<td>2.025(3)</td>
<td>C(2) – C(1) – C(7)</td>
<td>117.0(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>2.3694(8)</td>
<td>C(1) – C(7) – N(1)</td>
<td>112.0(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>2.2798(8)</td>
<td>C(1) – C(7) – O(1)</td>
<td>125.7(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>2.048(3)</td>
<td>O(1) – C(7) – N(1)</td>
<td>122.3(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C(7) – N(1) – Au(1)</td>
<td>112.8(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C(7) – N(1) – P(1)</td>
<td>119.5(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P(1) – N(1) – Au(1)</td>
<td>127.68(16)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The coordination around the gold atom is as expected. It is essentially square planar [the greatest deviation from the mean coordination plane is C(2) which is 0.0906(15) Å below the plane of the atoms]. The bite angle of the ligand is 80.90(11)° and because of the greater trans influence of the aryl carbon versus the nitrogen the Au – Cl(1) bond length [2.3694(8) Å] is longer than the Au – Cl(2) distance [2.2798(8) Å].

In addition, the compound also crystallises with a molecule of dichloromethane. This is held in the lattice by an interaction of a proton on the dichloromethane with the two chloride ligands on the gold complex (i.e. a bifurcated hydrogen bond).

X-ray crystal structure of (2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)C(O)N=PPh₃, 2.46

The X-ray crystal structure of 2.46 confirms the endo isomer with the P=N bond contained in the metallacyclic ring. The environment around the gold is essentially square planar, as expected. Like the simple iminophosphoranes, the metallacyclic ring is severely puckered with the phosphorus and the nitrogen atoms showing the greatest deviations from the plane
[P(1) sits 0.2369(9) Å below the plane, N(1) 0.2880(9) Å above the plane]. As a result of the puckering, the PNCO moiety is no longer planar and has a twist of 24.97°. The bite angle of the ligand [84.38(9)°] is similar to what is seen in the simple iminophosphoranes.

![Molecular structure of (2-AuCl2C6H4)C(O)N=PPh3](image)

Figure 2.9 Molecular structure of (2-AuCl2C6H4)C(O)N=PPh3, 2.46 showing the atom numbering scheme. Hydrogen atoms have been omitted for clarity and the thermal ellipsoids are shown at the 50% probability level.

As with the exo isomer, the C=O bond length is shorter in the cycloaurated species [1.222(3) Å] than in the free ligand (1.2448(3) Å). This coincides with the P=N and N(1)-C(7) bonds becoming longer and is a result of loss of conjugation as the electron density is pulled onto the gold atom.

As with other crystallographically characterised gold(III) complexes containing C,N donor ligands the bond trans to the carbon (which has a higher trans influence) is longer than the bond trans to the nitrogen. Therefore, Au(1)-Cl(1) is longer than Au(1)-N(1) [2.3578(6) Å]
versus 2.2721(6) Å]. In addition, the Au-Cl bond *trans* to the nitrogen is shorter in 2.46 than it is in the simple iminophosphoranes indicating than an acyl group on the nitrogen results in the nitrogen having a lower *trans* influence. The Au-N coordinate bond length is significantly shorter in the *endo* complex [2.0321(18) Å] than in the *exo* complex [2.048(3) Å].

Table 2.6 Selected bond lengths (Å) and angles (°) for the complex 2.46, with esds in parenthesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Lengths (Å)</th>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Angles (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>2.3578(6)</td>
<td>Cl(1) – Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>90.89(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>2.2721(6)</td>
<td>Cl(2) – Au(1) – C(12)</td>
<td>92.59(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – C(12)</td>
<td>2.039(3)</td>
<td>C(12) – Au(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>84.38(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>2.0321(18)</td>
<td>N(1) – Au(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>91.97(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>1.645(2)</td>
<td>C(12) – C(11) – P(1)</td>
<td>115.72(17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N(1) – C(7)</td>
<td>1.401(3)</td>
<td>C(11) – P(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>99.18(10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(7) – O(1)</td>
<td>1.222(3)</td>
<td>P(1) – N(1) – Au(1)</td>
<td>111.98(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(12) – C(11)</td>
<td>1.412(3)</td>
<td>P(1) – N(1) – C(7)</td>
<td>116.59(15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(11) – P(1)</td>
<td>1.777(2)</td>
<td>N(1) – C(7) – O(1)</td>
<td>119.1(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N(1) – C(7) – C(1)</td>
<td>118.96(19)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2.9 Spectroscopic and mass spectrometric characterisation of *ortho-*mercurated and cycloaurated stabilised iminophosphoranes

NMR spectroscopy of *exo* complexes

Once again, $^{31}$P{H} NMR spectroscopy is very indicative of what is occurring in the complexes. Figure 2.10 shows the $^{31}$P{H} NMR spectra of the series of *exo* cyclometallated complexes. The ligand has a chemical shift of 21.3 ppm and the *ortho*-manganated complex 2.41 has a shift of 23.5 ppm – there is essentially no change between the two. As mentioned above, this indicates that the phosphorus atom is not included in the metallacyclic ring. There is little change on transmetallation to the *ortho*-mercurated complex – the chemical shift of 2.42 is 26.6 ppm. Unlike the simple iminophosphoranes there are no $^{199}$Hg satellite lines present as the mercury atom is now separated from the phosphorus by five bonds. The cycloaurated complex 2.43 has a chemical shift of 35.8 ppm which is slightly shifted from the
manganese and mercury examples. This is most probably because the nitrogen is now coordinated to the gold so the phosphorus (which is directly bonded to the nitrogen) is slightly more deshielded than in the other examples where the oxygen is coordinated to the metal. In addition, the chemical shift in 2.43 is significantly further upfield than in the simple cycloaurated iminophosphorane 2.29a (65.5 ppm) where the phosphorus is in the five-membered ring.

![NMR spectra of the series of exo cyclometallated complexes.](image)

**Figure 2.10** $^{31}$P{^1H} NMR spectra of the series of exo cyclometallated complexes.

**NMR spectroscopy of endo complexes**
The diaryl mercury complex 2.44 has a $^{31}$P{^1H} chemical shift of 0.4 ppm – the diiminophosphorane 2.45 has a chemical shift of 27.4 ppm, so a downfield shift of
approximately 30 ppm has been seen upon oxidation of P(III) to P(V). The chemical shift is very close to the *exo* isomer 2.42 but now $^{199}$Hg satellite peaks can also be seen – the $^3J_{PHg}$ coupling constant indicates that the mercury is attached at the *ortho* position of one of the P-bonded phenyl rings. Upon transmetallation to gold there is a significant downfield shift (of approximately 30 ppm) as the phosphorus is now in a five-membered ring 2.46 – the chemical shift of 60.5 ppm is now comparable with the cycloaurated iminophosphorane 2.29a. Figure 2.11 shows the $^{31}$P{$^1$H} chemical shifts associated with the *endo* complexes.

![Figure 2.11](image)

**Figure 2.11** $^{31}$P{$^1$H} NMR spectra of the series of *endo* cyclometallated complexes.

**Infrared spectroscopy of *exo* complexes**

Infrared spectroscopy can also be used to determine the binding mode of iminophosphoranes. It has previously been reported that when the stabilised iminophosphoranes form cyclometallated complexes with a nitrogen-metal bond the P=N stretch moves to lower energies and the C=O stretch moves to slightly higher energies.$^{(3, 17)}$ In Ph$_3$P=NC(O)Ph the P=N stretch occurs at 1341 cm$^{-1}$ and the C=O stretch at 1595 cm$^{-1}$.$^{(36)}$ The *ortho*-mercuroated *exo* complex 2.42 (in which the nitrogen is not involved in any interactions with the mercury)
has a P=N stretch at 1340 cm\(^{-1}\) and a C=O stretch at 1532 cm\(^{-1}\). The P=N shift remains relatively unchanged, the C=O shift has moved to lower wavenumbers because of a slight interaction with the mercury. In contrast, in the cycloaurated \textit{exo} complex 2.43 has a P=N stretch at 1285 cm\(^{-1}\); the significant shift to lower wavenumbers indicate that the ligand is coordinated through the nitrogen atom. The C=O stretch occurs at 1684 cm\(^{-1}\), the higher energy stretch associated with the loss of conjugation that is present in the ligand. IR data are displayed in Table 2.7

**Infrared spectroscopy of \textit{endo} complexes**

The \textit{endo} series of complexes show different IR behaviour to that of the \textit{exo} isomers. The P=N stretch of 2.45 occurs at 1323 cm\(^{-1}\), approximately 20 wavenumbers lower than in the ligand. This suggests an interaction between the nitrogen and the mercury. Upon transmetallation to the gold, there is a further decrease in wavenumber to 1282 cm\(^{-1}\). This pattern is analogous to that seen in the simple iminophosphorane complexes. There is a little change between the C=O stretches in the ligand and the \textit{ortho}-mercurated complex 2.45, however the in cycloaurated complex 2.46 the C=O stretch occurs at higher wavenumbers, again because of loss of conjugation in the metallacycle. Table 2.7 documents the IR absorbances for the \textit{endo} and \textit{exo} series of complexes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2.7</th>
<th>Selected IR absorbances (KBr disk) for the metallated iminophosphorane (\text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Ph}), including \textit{endo} and \textit{exo} isomers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complex</td>
<td>(\nu(\text{P=N}))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{NC(O)Ph})</td>
<td>1341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.41</td>
<td>1341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.42</td>
<td>1340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.43</td>
<td>1285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.45</td>
<td>1323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.46</td>
<td>1282</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Mass spectrometry of *exo* and *endo* complexes

The ions seen in the ESI mass spectra of the stabilised iminophosphoranes can not be directly compared to the ions seen for the simple iminophosphoranes because analysis was carried out on two different instruments with different ionisation sources. However, the main ionisation pathway for the mercury complexes was *via* the formation of charged species by picking up a cation from the solution (*e.g.* [M+Na]$^+$). For the gold complexes, a chloride ligand was lost to give a charged species (*e.g.* [M-Cl]$^+$).

### 2.2.10 Biological activity

The biological activity of 2.29a has been reported, and showed low anti-tumour activity against the P388 murine leukemia cell line.\(^{(18)}\) In order to determine if this is characteristic of cycloaurated iminophosphoranes, the activity of the alkyl compound 2.29f was evaluated. The bicyclic catecholate (2.35a and 2.35f) and thiosalicylate (2.36a and 2.36b) derivatives were also evaluated, since related derivatives have exhibited higher anti-tumour activity.\(^{(27)}\) Samples were tested in a 2:1 dichloromethane:methanol solvent system, using the methods described in Appendix I. Results of the assay are given in Table 2.8.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complex</th>
<th>IC$_{50}$a</th>
<th>ng mL$^{-1}$</th>
<th>µM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.29a</td>
<td>7546</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.29f</td>
<td>20021</td>
<td>33.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.35a</td>
<td>&lt;487</td>
<td>&lt;0.74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.35f</td>
<td>655</td>
<td>1.03</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.36a</td>
<td>&lt;487</td>
<td>&lt;0.69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.36f</td>
<td>658</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(a\) Concentration of sample required to reduce cell growth of the P388 murine leukaemia cell line by 50%.
In contrast to the dichloride complexes \textbf{2.29a} and \textbf{2.29f} which show low anti-tumour activity, the catecholate and thiosalicylate complexes show a ten-fold increase in the level of activity. In particular the complexes \textbf{2.35a} and \textbf{2.36a}, originating from complex \textbf{2.29a}, show a high level of activity. These preliminary results indicate that these systems (in particular the catecholate and thiosalicylate derivatives) show interesting biological activity and could form the basis for further investigation.

2.3 Conclusions
A range of new ortho-mercurated and cycloaurated simple iminophosphoranes, and their derivatives, have been synthesised and fully characterised by NMR spectroscopy and ESI mass spectrometry. X-ray crystal structures of three of these compounds have been carried out. The gold-nitrogen bond is relatively strong because when \textbf{2.29a} is reacted with PPh$_3$ the gold-nitrogen bond remains intact and a chloride ligand is substituted by PPh$_3$. Attempts at cleaving this bond by reacting \textbf{2.29a} with ligands such as cyanide or dithiocarbamates were unsuccessful. Both chloride ligands can be replaced by chelating ligands to give bi-metallacyclic compounds with enhanced anti-tumour activity. In addition, the cycloauration of the stabilised iminophosphorane Ph$_3$P=NC(O)Ph was investigated. Both the \textit{exo} and the \textit{endo} isomers were obtained, using targeted strategies for each, with their structures confirmed by X-ray crystallography.

2.4 Experimental

2.4.1 General
The known aminophosphonium salts \textbf{2.32f} and \textbf{2.32b} and the iminophosphoranes \textbf{2.33d} and \textbf{2.33f} were prepared by literature procedures; \textbf{2.32c} was prepared by a completely analogous method to \textbf{2.32b}.\textsuperscript{(1, 20)} Complex \textbf{2.29a} was prepared by the literature procedure.\textsuperscript{(18)} The iminophosphoranes \textbf{2.33d} and Ph$_3$P=NC(O)Ph was synthesised by the Staudinger reaction by Miss Frances Gourdie and Miss Rachael Linklater respectively. \textit{n}-Butyllithium (either 1.6 M in hexanes or 2.0 M in cyclohexane, Aldrich), PhBr (AJAX Chemicals), HgCl$_2$, catechol,
sodium diethyldithiocarbamate trihydrate (BDH), Hg(OAc)$_2$ (Riedel de Haën) and thiosalicylic acid (Sigma) were used as received. PhCH$_2$Mn(CO)$_5$, Hg(C$_6$H$_4$PPh$_2$)$_2$ were prepared by modifications of the literature procedures, described in Appendix I. Metallation reactions were carried out under a nitrogen atmosphere using standard Schlenk techniques, with light also being excluded in the case of cycloauration reactions.

2.4.2 Syntheses of simple ortho-metallated iminophosphoranes and the reactions they undergo

Preparation of (2-HgBrC$_6$H$_4$)Ph$_2$P=N-(R,S)-CHMePh 2.34b

[Ph$_3$P-NH-(R,S)-CHMePh]$^+$Br$^-$ 2.32b (1.000 g, 2.16 mmol) was suspended in diethyl ether (30 mL) and cooled to -84 °C in an ethyl acetate slush bath. Bu$^n$Li (1.6 M, 2.7 mL, 4.32 mmol) was added dropwise with stirring. The solution was allowed to warm to room temperature to give a clear orange solution that was stirred for an additional 30 min. HgCl$_2$ (0.586 g, 2.16 mmol) was added in one portion and after stirring for 1 h the solvent was removed and the solid extracted into dichloromethane (2 × 10 mL), filtered and diethyl ether (20 mL) was added to the filtrate. Storage at -20 °C gave white crystals of (2-HgBrC$_6$H$_4$)Ph$_2$P=N-(R,S)-CHMePh 2.34b (0.606 g, 42%).

Found: C 47.7, H 3.6, N 2.2; C$_{26}$H$_{23}$NPBrHg requires C 47.3, H 3.5, N 2.1%.

NMR: $^1$H: $\delta$ 1.64 (d, CH$_3$), 4.68 (m, CH), 7.00-7.69 (m, Ar-H); $^{31}$P{$^1$H}: $\delta$ 14.8, ($^3$J$_{HP}$ = 317 Hz) ppm.

ESI-MS: $m/z$: 662 (100%, [M+H]$^+$).

IR: $\nu$(P=N) = 1163 cm$^{-1}$ (vs).
Preparation of (2-HgBrC₆H₄)Ph₂P=N-(S)-CHMePh 2.34c

As for the preparation of 2.34b above, [Ph₃P-NH-(S)-CHMePh]⁺Br⁻ 2.32c (2.000 g, 4.34 mmol) was suspended in diethyl ether (30 mL) and Bu²Li (1.6 M, 5.4 mL, 8.68 mmol) added. After addition of HgCl₂ (1.178 g, 4.34 mmol), work-up as above gave 1.780 g, (62%) of (2-HgBrC₆H₄)Ph₂P=N-(S)-CHMePh 2.34c. The product was identified by ¹H and ³¹P{¹H} NMR spectroscopy.

Preparation of (2-HgClC₆H₄)Ph₂P=NC₆H₄F 2.28d

A solution of Bu²Li (2 mL, 2.69 mmol) was added to a solution of PhBr (0.28 mL, 2.69 mmol) in diethyl ether (20 mL) and stirred for 15 min. Ph₃P=NC₆H₄F 2.33d (1.000 g, 2.69 mmol) was added to immediately give a dark orange solution. After stirring for 1.5 h a white precipitate had formed. HgCl₂ (0.730 g, 2.69 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred for an additional hour. Workup as for 2.34b gave crystals of (2-HgClC₆H₄)Ph₂P=NC₆H₄F, 2.28d (0.927 g, 57%).

Found: C 47.5, H 2.9, N 2.4; C₂₄H₁₈NFPClHg requires C 47.5, H 3.0, N 2.3%.

NMR: ¹H: δ 6.69-6.75, 6.80-6.85, 7.27-7.34, 7.40-7.70 (all m, Ar-H); ³¹P{¹H}: δ 9.0 (br), (J_HgP = 320 Hz) ppm.

ESI-MS: m/z: 608 (100%, [M+H]⁺), 943 (35%, [2-Hg(C₆H₄)₂Ph₂P=NC₆H₄F]+H⁺).

IR: ν(P=N) = 1309 cm⁻¹ (vs).

Preparation of (2-HgClC₆H₄)Ph₂P=NBu² 2.28f

As for 2.28d above, Ph₃P=NBu² 2.33f (1.199 g, 3.60 mmol) was added to a solution of PhBr (0.38 mL, 3.60 mmol) and Bu²Li (1.6 M, 2.25 mL, 3.60 mmol) in diethyl ether (20 mL). Addition of HgCl₂ (0.977 g, 3.60 mmol) followed by workup gave (2-HgClC₆H₄)Ph₂P=NBu² 2.28f (0.909 g, 44%).
Found: C 46.0, H 4.1, N 2.5; C_{22}H_{23}NPClHg requires C 46.5, H 4.1, N 2.5%.

NMR: \(^1H\): \(\delta\) 1.29 (s, CH\(_3\)), 7.13-7.19, 7.31-7.64, 7.74-7.81 (all m, Ar-H); \(^{31}P\{^1H\}\): \(\delta\) 2.2, \((^3J_{HgP} = 341 \text{ Hz})\) ppm.

ESI-MS: \(m/z\): 570 (100\%, [M+H]\\(^+\)).

IR: \(\nu(P=N) = 1223 \text{ cm}^{-1}\) (vs).

Alternative synthesis:
Ph\(_3\)P=NBu' \textbf{2.33f} (0.300 g, 0.90 mmol) and Hg(OAc)$_2$ (0.288 g, 0.90 mmol) were refluxed under nitrogen in dry degassed THF (20 mL) for 16 h. The solution was allowed to cool, LiCl (0.076 g, 1.79 mmol) was added and stirred for an additional 4 h. The solution was filtered and evaporated to dryness. The filtrate was redissolved in dichloromethane (2 \times 10 mL) and diethyl ether (20 mL) was added. Storage at -20 °C gave crystals of (2-HgClC\(_6\)H\(_4\))Ph\(_2\)P=NBu' \textbf{2.28f} (0.128 g, 25\%), identified by \(^1H\) and \(^{31}P\{^1H\}\) NMR spectroscopy.

Preparation of (2-AuCl\(_2\)C\(_6\)H\(_4\))Ph\(_2\)P=N-(\(R,S\))-CHMePh \textbf{2.29b}
The complex (2-HgBrC\(_6\)H\(_4\))Ph\(_2\)P=N-(\(R,S\))-CHMePh \textbf{2.34b} (0.100 g, 0.15 mmol), [Me\(_4\)N][AuCl\(_4\)] (0.062 g, 0.15 mmol) and [Me\(_4\)N]Cl (0.016 g, 0.15 mmol) were added to degassed acetonitrile (15 mL) and stirred in a foil-covered flask for 48 h. The solvent was removed and the yellow solid extracted into dichloromethane (2 \times 10 mL), filtered and diethyl ether was added to the filtrate. Storage at -20 °C gave yellow crystals of (2-AuCl\(_2\)C\(_6\)H\(_4\))Ph\(_2\)P=N-(\(R,S\))-CHMePh) \textbf{2.29b} (0.062 g, 64\%).

Found: C 47.2, H 3.5, N 2.1; C\(_{26}H_{23}NPClAu\) requires C 48.2, H 3.6, N 2.2%.

NMR: \(^1H\): \(\delta\) 1.62 (d, CH\(_3\)), 5.85 (m, CH), 6.92-7.01, 7.05-7.08, 7.18-7.23, 7.32-7.53, 7.58-7.67, 8.17-8.21 (all m, Ar-H); \(^{31}P\{^1H\}\): \(\delta\) 59.0 ppm.

IR: $\nu$(P=N) = 1138 cm$^{-1}$ (s).

**Preparation of (2-AuCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)Ph$_2$P=N-(S)-CHMePh 2.29c**

Analogous to 2.29b, (2-HgBrC$_6$H$_4$)Ph$_2$P=N-(S)-CHMePh 2.34c (1.000 g, 1.51 mmol), [Me$_4$N][AuCl$_4$] (0.623 g, 1.51 mmol) and [Me$_4$N]Cl (0.166 g, 1.51 mmol) were reacted in acetonitrile (30 mL) for 48 h. Workup gave (2-AuCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)Ph$_2$P=N-(S)-CHMePh as pale yellow crystals (0.139 g, 14%). The product was identified as 2.29c by $^1$H and $^{31}$P{$^1$H} NMR spectroscopy.

**Preparation of (2-AuCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)Ph$_2$P=NC$_6$H$_4$F 2.29d**

As for 2.29b, (2-HgClC$_6$H$_4$)Ph$_2$P=NC$_6$H$_4$F 2.28d (0.174 g, 0.29 mmol), [Me$_4$N][AuCl$_4$] (0.119 g, 0.29 mmol) and [Me$_4$N]Cl (0.032 g, 0.29 mmol) in acetonitrile (20 mL) for 24 h. Work-up gave (2-AuCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)Ph$_2$P=NC$_6$H$_4$F, 2.29d as bright yellow crystals (0.074 g, 40%).

Found: C 45.2, H 3.1, N 2.2; C$_{24}$H$_{18}$NFPCl$_2$Au requires C 45.2, H 2.8, N 2.2%.

NMR: $^1$H: $\delta$ 6.73-6.80, 6.92-6.97, 7.10-7.17, 7.33-7.38, 7.49-7.62, 7.71-7.78, 8.41-8.46 (all m, Ar-H); $^{31}$P{$^1$H}: $\delta$ 66.9 ppm.

ESI-MS: $m/z$: 602 (100%, [M-Cl]$^+$), 1241 (80%, [2M-Cl]$^+$); pyridine doped $m/z$: 681 (100%, [M-Cl+py]$^+$).

IR: $\nu$(P=N) = 1219 cm$^{-1}$ (s).
Preparation of (2-AuCl<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>)Ph<sub>2</sub>P=NBu<sup>2</sup>f 2.29f

As for 2.29b, (2-HgClC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>)Ph<sub>2</sub>P=NBu<sup>2</sup>f 2.28f (0.400 g, 0.70 mmol), [Me<sub>4</sub>N][AuCl<sub>4</sub>] (0.291 g, 0.70 mmol) and [Me<sub>4</sub>N]Cl (0.077 g, 0.70 mmol) were reacted in acetonitrile (20 mL) for 24 h. Workup gave yellow crystals of (2-AuCl<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>)Ph<sub>2</sub>P=NBu<sup>2</sup>f 2.29f (0.312 g, 74%).

Found: C 44.2, H 3.9, N 2.4; C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>23</sub>NPCl<sub>2</sub>Au requires C 44.0, H 3.9, N 2.3%.

NMR: 1H: δ 1.34 (s, CH<sub>3</sub>), 7.31-7.40, 7.55-7.62, 7.67-7.72, 7.85-7.91, 8.04-8.07 (all m, Ar-H); 31P{1H}: δ 46.1 ppm.

ESI-MS: m/z: 564 (100%, [M-Cl]<sup>+</sup>), 673 (35%, [M+Me<sub>4</sub>N]<sup>+</sup>), 1165 (30%, [2M-Cl]<sup>+</sup>); pyridine doped m/z: 643 (100%, [M-Cl+py]<sup>+</sup>), 564 (60%, [M-Cl]<sup>+</sup>).

IR: ν(P=N) = 1183 cm<sup>-1</sup> (m).

Synthesis of 2.35a

The complex (2-AuCl<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>)Ph<sub>2</sub>P=NPh 2.29a (0.100 g, 0.16 mmol) and catechol (0.018 g, 0.16 mmol) were refluxed in methanol (20 mL). With stirring, Me<sub>3</sub>N (1 mL, excess) was added resulting in the yellow solution immediately turning dark orange. After refluxing for a further 20 min. the solution was allowed to cool, water (20 mL) was added and stirring continued overnight. The precipitate that had formed was filtered, washed with water (2 × 10 mL) and diethyl ether (10 mL) and dried under vacuum to give 2.35a (0.085 g, 81%) as a rose-coloured solid.

Found: C 54.8, H 3.6, N 2.2; C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>23</sub>No<sub>2</sub>PAu requires C 54.8, H 3.5, N 2.1%.

NMR: 1H: δ 6.42-6.47, 6.73-6.76, 7.01-7.15, 7.29-7.36, 7.49-7.57, 7.66-7.79, 8.19-8.22 (all m, Ar-H); 31P{1H}: δ 60.9 ppm.

IR: ν(P=N) = 1254 cm⁻¹ (m).

**Synthesis of 2.35f**

The complex (2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)Ph₂P=NBu₂ 2.29f (0.100 g, 0.17 mmol) and catechol (0.019 g, 0.17 mmol) were brought to reflux in methanol (15 mL). With stirring, Me₃N (1 mL, excess) was added resulting in the yellow solution turning dark orange. After refluxing for a further 15 minutes the now purple solution was allowed to cool, water (20 mL) was added, and stirring continued overnight. The precipitate that had formed was filtered, washed with water (3 × 10 mL) and diethyl ether (20 mL) and dried under vacuum to give 2.35f (0.067 g, 62%) as a rose-coloured solid. A sample for microanalysis was recrystallised from dichloromethane/diethyl ether.

Found: C 51.3, H 4.2, N 2.2; C₂₈H₂₇NO₂PAu requires C 52.8, H 4.3, 2.2; C₂₈H₂₇AuNO₂P · H₂O requires C 51.3, H 4.5, N 2.1%.

NMR: ¹H: δ 1.52 (s, CH₃), 6.45-6.50, 6.53-6.58, 6.67-6.79, 7.13-7.20, 7.34-7.39, 7.56-7.62, 7.66-7.71, 7.91-7.98, 8.11-8.14 (all m, Ar-H) ³¹P{¹H}: δ 55.7 ppm.

ESI-MS: m/z: 638 (100%, [M+H]^+), 1275 (30%, [2M+H]^+); NaCl doped m/z: 660 (100%, [M+Na]^+), 1297 (60%, [2M+Na]^+), 638 (40% [M+H]^+).

IR: ν(P=N) = 1254 cm⁻¹ (m).

**Synthesis of 2.36a**

To a stirred methanolic solution (15 mL) of (2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)Ph₂P=NPh 2.29a (0.100 g, 0.16 mmol) and thiosalicylic acid (0.025 g, 0.16 mmol), Me₃N (1 mL, excess) was added, resulting
in the pale yellow solution immediately becoming darker. Stirring was continued in the dark for a further 90 minutes before water (20 mL) was added. The fine yellow precipitate that had formed was filtered and washed with water (3 × 10 mL) and diethyl ether (1 × 10 mL) and dried under vacuum to give 2.36a (0.099 g, 88%).

Found: C 53.1, H 3.4, N 2.0; C_{31}H_{23}NO_2PSAu requires C 53.1, H 3.3, N 2.0%.

NMR: \( ^1\text{H} \): \( \delta \) 6.88-6.92, 7.01-7.21, 7.28-7.35, 7.46-7.57, 7.64-7.75, 8.00-8.04, 8.15-8.20 (all m, Ar-H); \( ^{31}\text{P} \{ ^1\text{H} \} : \delta \) 54.1 ppm

ESI-MS: \( m/z \): 901 (100%, \([2-Au(\{C_6H_4\}Ph_2P=NPPh)2]^+)\)), 702 (30%, \([M+H]^+)\)), 1404 (25%, \([2M+H]^+)\)); NaCl doped \( m/z \): 901 (100%, \([2-Au(\{C_6H_4\}Ph_2P=NPPh)2]^+)\)), 1425 (85%, \([2M+Na]^+)\)), 724 (40%, \([M+Na]^+)\)), 702 (10%, \([M+H]^+)\)), 1403 (7%, \([2M+H]^+)\)).

IR: \( \nu(P=N) = 1316 \text{ (m)}, \nu(C=O) = 1626 \text{ (vs) cm}^{-1}. \)

**Synthesis of 2.36f**

As for 2.36a, \((2-AuCl_2C_6H_4)Ph_2P=NBu^t\) 2.29f (0.101 g, 0.17 mmol) and thiosalicylic acid (0.026 g, 0.17 mmol) were reacted in methanol (15 mL). Addition of Me_3N (1 mL, excess) and water (20 mL) followed by workup gave 0.085 g (73%) of 2.36f as a yellow solid.

Found: C 51.0, H 4.0, N 2.0; C_{29}H_{27}NO_2PSAu requires C 51.1, H 4.0, N 2.1%.

NMR: \( ^1\text{H} \): \( \delta \) 1.40 (s, CH_3), 7.01-7.05, 7.15-7.25, 7.32-7.38, 7.43-7.47, 7.53-7.59, 7.63-7.69, 7.86-7.99, 8.14-8.19 (all m, Ar-H); \( ^{31}\text{P} \{ ^1\text{H} \} : \delta \) 43.2 ppm.

ESI-MS: \( m/z \): 682 (100%, \([M+H]^+)\)), 1212 (52%, unidentified), 1363 (30%, \([2M+H]^+)\)); NaCl doped \( m/z \): 704 (100%, \([M+Na]^+)\)), 1385 (87%, \([2M+Na]^+)\)).

IR: \( \nu(P=N) = 1310 \text{ (m)}, \nu(C=O) = 1626 \text{ (vs) cm}^{-1}. \)
Synthesis of [2-AuCl(PPh3)C₆H₄]Ph₂P=NPh|PF₆ 2.39

The complex (2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)Ph₂P=NPh 2.29a (0.104 g, 0.17 mmol), PPh₃ (0.045 g, 0.17 mmol) and NH₄PF₆ (0.111 g, 0.68 mmol) were stirred in dichloromethane (10 mL) for 4 h. The solution was filtered and the dark orange filtrate reduced in volume (~2 mL). Diethyl ether was added until the solution went cloudy. Storage at -20 °C gave yellow crystals of [(2-AuCl(PPh₃)C₆H₄)Ph₂P=NPh]PF₆ (0.088 g, 52%).

Found: C 50.2, H 3.5, N 1.5; C₄₂H₃₄NF₆P₃ClAu requires C 50.9, H 3.5, N 1.4%.

NMR: ¹H: δ 6.90-7.03, 7.09-7.14, 7.30-7.34, 7.51-7.57, 7.61-7.71, 7.78-7.87 (all m, Ar-H); ³¹P{¹H}: δ 60.6 (P=N), 41.0 (PPh₃) (1:1 ratio) ppm.

ESI-MS: m/z: 846 (100%, [(2-Cl(PPh₃)AuC₆H₄)Ph₂P=NPh]⁺).

IR: ν(P=N) = 1253 cm⁻¹ (w).

Synthesis of 2.40

The complex (2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)Ph₂P=NPh 2.29a (0.100 g, 0.16 mmol) and Na₂S₂CNEt₂·3H₂O (0.036 g, 0.16 mmol) were stirred in dichloromethane (10 mL) for 2.5 h. NH₄PF₆ (0.065 g, 0.40 mmol) was added and the solution stirred for an additional 18 h. The insoluble material was removed by filtration and the yellow solution reduced in volume (~2 mL). Diethyl ether was added until the solution went cloudy. Storage at -20 °C gave yellow microcrystals (0.099 g, 73%) of 2.40.

Found: C 41.8, H 3.6, N 3.2; C₂₉H₂₉N₂F₆P₃S₂Au requires C 41.3, H 3.5, N 3.3%.

NMR: ¹H: δ 1.30 (t, CH₃), 1.43 (t, CH₃), 3.71 (q, CH₂), 3.82 (q, CH₂), 6.83-6.86, 7.06-7.12, 7.17-7.23, 7.28-7.35, 7.39-7.43, 7.47-7.54, 7.57-7.80 (all m, Ar-H); ³¹P{¹H}: δ 65.9 ppm.
2.4.3 Syntheses of ortho-metallated stabilised iminophosphoranes

Preparation of Ph$_3$P=NC(O)Bu$'$

Pivalic anhydride (2.0 mL, 9.9 mmol) and sodium azide (0.769 g, 11.8 mmol) were stirred in dry, degassed acetone (100 mL) for 10 minutes. PPh$_3$ (2.59 g, 9.9 mmol) was added in one portion and the resulting solution was stirred at room temperature for 72 hours. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the solid extracted into dichloromethane (40 mL) and filtered. Diethyl ether (60 mL) was added and the solution was stored at -25 °C. Ph$_3$P=NC(O)Bu$'$ crystallised out as white crystals (2.20 g, 62%).

Found: C 76.3, H 6.8, N 3.8; C$_{23}$H$_{24}$NOP requires C 76.4, H 6.7, N 3.9%.

NMR: $^1$H $\delta$ 1.29 (s, 9H, H-1), 7.44 (m, 6H, H-5), 7.53 (m, 3H, H-7), 7.74 (m, 6H, H-6); $^{13}$C {$^1$H} $\delta$ 28.8 (s, C-1), 41.4 (d, $^3$J$_{PC}$ = 17.2 Hz, C-2), 128.6 (d, $^3$J$_{PC}$ = 12.0 Hz, C-6), 129.2 (d, $^1$J$_{PC}$ = 98.8 Hz, C-4), 131.9 (d, $^4$J$_{PC}$ = 2.9 Hz, C-7), 133.1 (d, $^3$J$_{PC}$ = 9.8 Hz, C-5), 190.6 (d, $^2$J$_{PC}$ = 11.0 Hz, C-3); $^{31}$P {$^1$H} $\delta$ 18.3 ppm (see Scheme 2.29 for NMR labelling scheme).


IR: $\nu$(P=N) = 1322 (vs), $\nu$(C=O) = 1580 (s) cm$^{-1}$.

Scheme 2.29 NMR labelling scheme for complexes Ph$_3$P=NC(O)Bu$'$. 
Preparation of (2-Mn(CO)₄C₆H₄)C(O)N=PPh₃ 2.41
PhCH₂Mn(CO)₅ (0.200 g, 0.70 mmol) and Ph₃P=NC(O)Ph (0.268 g, 0.70 mmol) were refluxed in n-heptane (30 mL) for 2 hours. While hot the solution was filtered and the yellow filtrate reduced in volume until signs of crystallisation. Storage at -20 °C gave yellow crystals of (2-Mn(CO)₄C₆H₄)C(O)N=PPh₃ (0.246 g, 65%).

Found: C 64.8, H 3.8, N 2.6; C₂₉H₁₉NO₅PMn requires C 63.6, H 3.5, N 2.6%.

NMR: ¹H δ 7.13 (t, 1H, H-5), 7.33 (t, 1H, H-4), 7.51 (m, 6H, H-10), 7.62 (m, 3H, H-11), 7.75 (m, 6H, H-9), 7.90 (d, 1H, H-3), 8.09 (d, 1H, H-6); ¹³C{¹H} δ 123.1 (C-5), 127.2 (d, J₉₈ = 100.1 Hz, C-8), 128.9 (d, J₉₈ = 12.6 Hz, C-10), 129.3 (C-6), 131.8 (C-4), 132.9 (d, J₉₈ = 3.1 Hz, C-11), 133.2 (d, J₉₈ = 10.1 Hz, C-9), 140.9 (C-3), 143.3 (d, J₉₈ = 16.6 Hz, C-1), 181.2 (d, J₉₈ = 2.8 Hz, C-2), 189.0 (d, J₉₈ = 10.7 Hz, C-7), 213.4 (C=O), 214.8 (C=O), 221.8 (C=O); ³¹P{¹H} δ 23.5 ppm (see Scheme 2.30 for the NMR labelling system).

ESI-MS (-ve): m/z: 553.958 (100%, [M-CO+Cl]⁻, calc 554.012), 581.949 (90%, [M+Cl]⁻, calc 582.007), 525.968 (25%, [M-2CO+Cl]⁻, calc 526.017).

IR: ν(P=N) = 1341 (vs), ν(C=O) = 1488 (s) cm⁻¹.

Preparation of (2-HgClC₆H₄)C(O)N=PPh₃ 2.42
(2-Mn(CO)₄C₆H₄)C(O)N=PPh₃ 2.41 (0.200 g, 0.37 mmol) and HgCl₂ (0.199 g, 0.73 mmol) were refluxed in methanol (20 mL) for 5 hours during which time the yellow solution became colourless and a white solid formed. The solution was cooled in ice then filtered and the white solid washed well with cold methanol. The solid was redissolved in dichloromethane (50 mL) and filtered through a column of celite. The resulting clear solution was reduced in volume (~5 mL) and diethyl ether was added dropwise until the solution went cloudy. Storage at -20 °C gave white crystals of (2-HgClC₆H₄)C(O)N=PPh₃ (0.129 g, 57%).

Found: C 48.9, H 3.1, N 2.3; C₂₅H₁₉NOPClHg requires C 48.7, H 3.1, N 2.3%.
**Preparation of** (2-AuCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)C(O)N=PPh$_3$ **2.43**

(2-HgCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)C(O)N=PPh$_3$ **2.42** (0.100 g, 0.16 mmol), [Me$_4$N][AuCl$_4$] (0.067 g, 0.16 mmol) and [Me$_4$N]Cl (0.018 g, 0.17 mmol) were stirred in acetonitrile (10 mL) for 2 days in a foil-covered flask. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the yellow solid extracted into dichloromethane (3 × 10 mL) and filtered. The yellow solution was reduced in volume (~5 mL) and subsequent addition of diethyl ether and storage at -20 °C gave pale yellow crystals of (2-AuCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)C(O)N=PPh$_3$ (0.065 g, 62%).

Found: C 42.7, H 2.9, N 1.9, C$_{25}$H$_{19}$NOPCl$_2$Au · CH$_2$Cl$_2$ requires C 42.6, H 2.9, N 1.9%.

NMR: $^1$H $\delta$ 7.29 (d, 1H, H-6), 7.37 (m, 1H, H-4), 7.40 (m, 1H, H-5), 7.58 (m, 6H, H-10) 7.69 (m, 3H, H-11), 7.95 (m, 6H, H-9) 8.10 (d, 1H, H-3); $^{13}$C {$^1$H} $\delta$ 124.0 (d, $^1$J$_{PC} = 103.3$ Hz, C-8), 128.5 (C-6), 129.2 (d, $^3$J$_{PC} = 13.6$ Hz, C-10), 130.1 (C-3), 130.3 (C-5 and C-2), 133.6 (C-4), 133.8 (d, $^4$J$_{PC} = 2.6$ Hz, C-11), 133.9 (d, $^2$J$_{PC} = 10.6$ Hz, C-9), 144.9 (C-1), 179.5 (d, $^2$J$_{PC} = 3.9$ Hz, C-7); $^{31}$P {$^1$H} $\delta$ 35.8 ppm (see Scheme 2.30 for the NMR labelling scheme).

ESI-MS: $m/z$: 612.059 (100%, [M-Cl]$^+$, calc 612.055).
Preparation of 2-Hg(C₆H₄P(=NCOPh)Ph₂)₂ 2.45
To a degassed solution of N₃C(O)Ph (0.081 g, 0.55 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (10 mL) 2-
Hg(C₆H₄PPh₂)₂ 2.44 (0.200 g, 0.28 mmol) was added and the resulting was stirred at room
temperature under nitrogen for 24 hours. The solution was reduced in volume and diethyl
ether was added until signs of crystallisation. Storage at -20 °C gave white microcrystals of
2-Hg(C₆H₄P(=NCOPh)Ph₂)₂ (0.207 g, 77%).

Found: C 62.2, H 4.1, N 2.8; C₅₀H₃₈P₂N₂O₂Hg requires C 62.5, H 4.0, N 2.9%.

NMR: ¹H δ 7.09 (m, 3H), 7.22 (m, 4H), 7.40 (m, 4H), 7.51 (m, 2H), 7.72 (m, 4H), 8.12 (d, 2H); ³¹P{¹H} δ 27.4 (³J_HgP = 171 Hz) ppm.


IR: v(P=N) = 1323 (vs), v(C=O) = 1598 (s) cm⁻¹.

Preparation of (2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)Ph₂P=NCOPh 2.46
2-Hg(C₆H₄P(=NCOPh)Ph₂)₂ 2.45 (0.100 g, 0.10 mmol), [Me₄N][AuCl₄] (0.086 g, 0.21 mmol)
and [Me₄N][AuCl₄] (0.011g, 0.10 mmol) were stirred in acetonitrile (10 mL) for seven days
in a foil-covered flask. Work-up as for 2.43 gave yellow microcrystals (0.091 g, 68%).
NMR: $^1$H δ 7.18 (m, 1H), 7.41 (m, 3H), 7.51 (m, 2H), 7.60 (m, 4H), 7.72 (m, 2H), 7.88 (m, 4H), 8.01 (d, 2H), 8.26 (d, 1H); $^{31}$P{$^1$H} δ 60.5 ppm.


IR: $\nu$(P=N) = 1282 (vs), $\nu$(C=O) = 1641 (vs) cm$^{-1}$.

2.4.4 X-ray crystal structure determinations

Single crystals of X-ray quality were grown by vapour diffusion of either diethyl ether (2.29c, 2.39 and 2.46) or pentane (2.36f) into a dichloromethane solution of the compound at room temperature. Crystals of 2.42 and 2.43 were grown by adding diethyl ether to a dichloromethane solution of the compound and storing at -20 °C. Compounds 2.29c and 2.39 crystallised as yellow blocks, 2.36f as orange plates, 2.42 as colourless plates and 2.43 (the dichloromethane solvate) as pale yellow blocks.

Data collection

Unit cell dimensions and intensity data (Table 2.7) were collected at either the University of Canterbury on a Bruker Nonius Apex II CCD diffractometer (2.29c, 2.36f, 2.39 and 2.46) or the University of Auckland on a Bruker Smart CCD diffractometer (2.42 and 2.43). Absorption correction of the data was carried out by semi-empirical methods (SADABS$^{(42)}$).

Solution and refinement

Structures were solved by either the Direct Methods (2.39) or Patterson (2.29c, 2.36f, 2.42, 2.43 and 2.46) options of SHELXS-97.$^{(43)}$ In all cases the heavy atom (either the gold or mercury) was initially located followed by all other atoms from a series of difference maps. Full-matrix least-squares refinement (SHELXL-97$^{(44)}$) was based upon $F_0^2$ with all non-
Table 2.9  Crystallographic data for the complexes 2.29c, 2.36f, 2.39, 2.42, 2.43 and 2.46.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complex</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Molecular Weight</th>
<th>T/K</th>
<th>Crystal system</th>
<th>Space group</th>
<th>a (Å)</th>
<th>b (Å)</th>
<th>c (Å)</th>
<th>α (°)</th>
<th>β (°)</th>
<th>γ (°)</th>
<th>V (Å³)</th>
<th>Z</th>
<th>Dcalc (g cm⁻³)</th>
<th>Tmax/min</th>
<th>Number of unique reflections</th>
<th>Number of observed reflections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.29c</td>
<td>C₂₅H₂₃NPCl₂Au</td>
<td>648.29</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>Triclinic</td>
<td>P1</td>
<td>9.0297(4)</td>
<td>9.2152(4)</td>
<td>9.3699(4)</td>
<td>61.462(2)</td>
<td>63.334(2)</td>
<td>61.134(2)</td>
<td>575.22(4)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.871</td>
<td>0.5534, 0.0508</td>
<td>5778</td>
<td>5273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.36f</td>
<td>C₂₅H₂₇NO₂PSAu</td>
<td>681.51</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>Monoclinic</td>
<td>P2₁/n</td>
<td>9.0966(2)</td>
<td>17.4390(4)</td>
<td>15.6240(4)</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>93.998(1)</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>2472.49(1)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1.831</td>
<td>0.5267, 0.2164</td>
<td>10185</td>
<td>8940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.39</td>
<td>C₂₄H₃₉NO₁₈F₆PClAu</td>
<td>1029.09</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>Monoclinic</td>
<td>C2/c</td>
<td>50.109(2)</td>
<td>9.8843(5)</td>
<td>18.3601(8)</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>111.043(2)</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>8487.2(7)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1.611</td>
<td>0.530, 0.327</td>
<td>13986</td>
<td>11379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.42</td>
<td>C₂₅H₁₉NPOClHg</td>
<td>616.42</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>Triclinic</td>
<td>P₁</td>
<td>8.7828(3)</td>
<td>10.6870(3)</td>
<td>12.5133(4)</td>
<td>105.335(1)</td>
<td>104.864(1)</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>1090.64(6)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.877</td>
<td>0.5301, 0.3545</td>
<td>5239</td>
<td>4927</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.43</td>
<td>C₂₅H₂₁NPOCl₄Au</td>
<td>733.17</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>Monoclinic</td>
<td>P2₁/n</td>
<td>10.4176(3)</td>
<td>17.6738(4)</td>
<td>15.0557(5)</td>
<td>110.231(2)</td>
<td>110.231(2)</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>2601.02(13)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1.872</td>
<td>0.6390, 0.5257</td>
<td>6087</td>
<td>6087</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.46</td>
<td>C₂₅H₁₉NPOCl₃Au</td>
<td>648.25</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>Tetragonal</td>
<td>I-4</td>
<td>21.4348(6)</td>
<td>21.4348(6)</td>
<td>9.7613(3)</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>4484.8(2)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1.920</td>
<td>0.3396, 0.1159</td>
<td>8411</td>
<td>8021</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Flack x parameter: -0.005(7)
hydrogen atoms refined anisotropically (with the exceptions of the cases mentioned below) and hydrogen atoms in calculated positions.

Complex 2.39 crystallised with the phosphorus of one PF$_6^-$ falling on a crystallographic inversion centre. The other half of the anion was in a hole which contained either a PF$_6^-$ or a diethyl ether molecule (50:50) occupancy. Both the PF$_6^-$ and the diethyl ether showed considerable disorder and as a result were not refined anisotropically and the hydrogen atoms were excluded from the diethyl ether. Bond lengths in these species were constrained.

After the final refinement complex 2.29c showed significant ripples around the gold. As a result the anisotropic displacement parameters for C(12) and C(13) were unrealistic and thus were refined isotropically.

### 2.5 References

5. D. Comrie; *Undergraduate Laboratory Report*, 2000, University of Waikato.
36. R. Linklater; *Undergraduate Laboratory Report*, **2008**, University of Waikato.


CHAPTER THREE

The Cycloauration of Phosphine Chalcogenides

3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 Metal complexes of phosphine chalcogenides

Metal coordination compounds of tertiary phosphine chalcogenides are well known and a number of reviews are dedicated to complexes with either the oxygen, sulfur or selenium atom of the ligand acting as a neutral donor to the metal centre (i.e. binding to the metal in an η¹ fashion). Both Ph₃P=O (a hard donor ligand) and Ph₃P=S (a soft donor ligand) form complexes with Au(III) (a soft metal centre) via the electron rich chalcogen atom. To the best of our knowledge, there are no examples of cycloaurated phosphine chalcogenides.

Examples of orthometallated phosphine chalcogenide ligands in general are rare in the literature. The series of ortho-manganated complexes of Ph₃P=O, Ph₃P=S and Ph₃P=Se have been studied (3.1a-c, Scheme 3.1) with the sulfide and selenide complexes structurally characterised. Yields of the sulfide complex 3.1c were excellent (90%) but both the selenide 3.1c (22%) and the oxide 3.1a (41% as an oil) were only obtained in moderate yields because of either the instability of the P=Se bond or the unfavourable bond angle that is formed at the oxygen in the cyclometallated complex. In addition, the metallacyclic ring in the sulfide complex was shown to be relatively stable as the displacement of two carbonyl ligands by P(OMe)₃ was favoured over cleavage of the metallacyclic ring (the S-Mn bond). In the tin complex 3.2 could be synthesised in poor yields by reaction of the free ligand with Ph₃SnCl via an ortho-lithiated intermediate. The resulting complex had weak O-Sn and S-Sn interactions both in the solid state and in solution. However, the cationic complex 3.3, formed by the reaction of 3.2 with CPh₃⁺PF₆⁻ had much stronger O-Sn and S-Sn interactions.
addition ortho-stannated Ph₃P=O 3.4, which has been structurally characterised, has been synthesised indirectly.ª(9)

Scheme 3.1  Cyclometallated triphenylphosphine chalcogenide ligands that have been reported in the literature.

With the exception of the Pt(II) and Pd(II) compounds (3.5a,b, Scheme 3.1) containing tridentate S, C, S’ pincer ligands10 (of which 3.5c was shown to be an efficient catalyst in the allylation of aldehydes with allyltributyltin11), a selection of indirectly synthesised Pt(IV)12
(3.6 and 3.8, Scheme 3.1) and Rh\(^{(13)}\) (3.7, Scheme 3.1) compounds containing Ph\(_3\)P=O moieties, and *ortho*-mercurated Ph\(_3\)P=O and Ph\(_3\)P=S\(^{(14, 15)}\) cyclometallated complexes containing the heavier transition metal elements have thus far been largely neglected.

3.1.2 Scope of this work

Because of the interesting and successful results we had seen with the cycloauration of iminophosphorane ligands (Chapter Two) we wished to investigate cycloauration of the isoelectronic phosphine chalcogenide (Group 16) ligands. The resulting *ortho*-metallated compounds were expected to be interesting as in addition to a carbon-gold sigma bond they would also contain a chalcogenide-gold coordinate bond – an unusual combination of a highly oxidising metal centre and a potentially reducing ligand.

The following chapter reports on the synthesis of a new *ortho*-mercurated phosphine chalcogenide and the first examples of cycloaurated Ph\(_3\)P=S and Ph\(_3\)P=Se. *Ortho*-mercuration and cycloauration of the related amino-phosphine sulfide ligand PhP(S)(NEt\(_2\))\(_2\) is also reported. All complexes have been fully characterised.

3.2 Results and Discussion

3.2.1 Synthesis and properties of *ortho*-mercurated phosphine chalcogenide complexes

Cycloaurated complexes are typically synthesized either by direct C-H bond activation of the ligand by a gold reagent (*e.g.* H[AuCl\(_4\)] or by transmetallation from the corresponding *ortho*-mercurated compound (see Chapter One).\(^{(16)}\) With the phosphine chalcogenide ligands utilised in this study direct cyclometallation with gold was not possible [because of reduction of the gold(III)] so the transmetallation route from the *ortho*-mercurated complexes needed to be employed (and hence prior synthesis of these compounds was required).
Bennett *et al.* have shown that the ortho-mercured bisphosphine complex 3.9 reacts with either hydrogen peroxide or sulfur to yield the bisphosphine-dioxide 3.10a or -disulfide 3.10b complexes respectively.\(^{(14, 15)}\) We have extended this series of compounds to the diselenide analogue 3.10c by reaction of the bis-phosphine 3.9 with (grey) selenium powder under ultrasonic conditions (Scheme 3.2). The synthesis of phosphine chalcogenides using ultrasonic techniques has been investigated previously in this laboratory and shows many benefits over traditional preparative methods.\(^{(17)}\) For example, reactions times are typically shorter and the high temperatures that are often needed can be avoided. Like 3.10a and 3.10b, the selenide derivative 3.10c is a white solid that is stable in air. The \(^{31}\text{P}\{^1\text{H}\}\) NMR spectrum of 3.10c gives a singlet at 41.4 ppm with the expected coupling to both the \(^{199}\text{Hg}\) (284 Hz) and the \(^{77}\text{Se}\) (684 Hz) nuclei observed. Mass spectrometry confirmed that both phosphine groups had been converted to the corresponding selenide, however ions due to mixed oxide/selenide species were also present. As only one compound was observed in the \(^{31}\text{P}\{^1\text{H}\}\) NMR spectrum it is possible that loss of selenium and subsequent oxidation is occurring inside the spectrometer. Alternatively, if very small traces of the mixed oxide/selenide species were present in the sample then they would ionise more efficiently than 3.10c. The addition of \(\text{AgNO}_3\) solution to 3.10c prior to ESI-MS analysis resulted in silver adducts in the spectrum (*e.g.* [3.10+Ag]\(^+\)), however the mixed oxide/selenide species was still present. The use of silver salts to aid in the analysis of phosphine and phosphine chalcogenide compounds is well documented.\(^{(18)}\)

![Scheme 3.2](image_url)

**Scheme 3.2**  Bennett’s diarylmmercury complex 3.9 with two pendant phosphine groups and the oxide 3.10a, sulfide 3.10b and selenide 3.10c derivatives that can subsequently be synthesised.
Synthesis of ortho-mercurated complexes is commonly achieved by either direct mercuration of the substrate or transmetallation reactions from ortho-lithiated or Grignard intermediates, with the choice of method often limited by the functional groups present on the ligand.\(^{(19)}\) This laboratory has previously been interested in ortho-manganated complexes and the subsequent reactions of these compounds.\(^{(20)}\) In 1987, Cooney et al. demonstrated that reaction of ortho-manganated acetophenone 3.11 with HgCl\(_2\) yielded the ortho-mercurated derivative 3.12 (Scheme 3.3) – a compound that can not be formed by the classical methods of mercuration.\(^{(21)}\) The use of lithium or Grignard reagents is excluded due to the ketone functionality and direct mercuration occurs at the methyl carbon (as a result of keto-enol tautomerisation). 

![Scheme 3.3](image)

Cooney’s synthesis of ortho-mercurated acetophenone 3.12 from ortho-manganated acetophenone 3.11.

As mentioned previously, ortho-manganated Ph\(_3\)P=S 3.1b (Scheme 3.1) can be synthesised in high yields (ca. 90\%) by the reaction of Ph\(_3\)P=S with PhCH\(_2\)Mn(CO)\(_5\)\(^{(7)}\) so we decided to investigate whether transmetallation from 3.1b would produce the ortho-mercurated complex 3.13, an analogous reaction to that shown in Scheme 3.3. In addition, it was shown in Chapter Two (Section 2.2.7) that a manganese reagent can be used to transfer an iminophosphorane ligand onto a mercury centre. Indeed, the desired compound is formed cleanly and in high yields upon refluxing 3.1b with a slight excess of HgCl\(_2\) in methanol (Scheme 3.4). The \(^{31}\)P\(\{^1\text{H}\}\) NMR spectrum of 3.13 (in CDCl\(_3\)) has a single peak at 48.2 ppm, which is close to the literature value of the bis-phosphine sulfide 3.10b (47.7 ppm, acquired in CD\(_2\)Cl\(_2\)).\(^{(15)}\)
Scheme 3.4 Synthesis of ortho-mercurated triphenylphosphine sulfide 3.13 from triphenylphosphine sulfide, via ortho-manganated triphenylphosphine sulfide 3.1b.

Although mass spectrometry indicated the diaryl-mercury complex 3.10b had also been formed (by an ion at m/z 789.093 corresponding to [3.10b+H]+, 100%), an X-ray crystal structure unambiguously showed that the complex has the formulation consistent with 3.13. The molecular structure and the atom labelling scheme are shown in Figure 3.1 and selected bond lengths and angles in Table 3.1. Full tables of structural parameters along with atomic coordinates and anisotropic displacement parameters can be found on the supplementary CD.

The mercury atom is bonded to the ortho carbon of one of the phenyl rings showing that transmetallation from the manganese compound has occurred. In other structurally characterised complexes where tertiary phosphine sulfides are coordinated to Hg(II) the S-Hg bond lengths range from 2.500 Å to 2.761 Å, and the P-S-Hg angles are in the range of 99.31-110.99°. The P-S-Hg angle in 3.13 is 86.58° which is extremely acute as most P-S-M angles in coordinated phosphine sulfides fall within the range of 96-120° (see Table 3.3). The P(1)-S(1) bond length in 3.13 [1.9745(11) Å] is longer than in Ph3P=S (1.950 Å), and the coordination around the mercury atom slightly deviates from linear geometry [C(12)-Hg(1)-Cl(1) angle of 173.34(9)°]. These observations indicate that the interaction between the mercury and sulfur [the Hg(1)-S(1) distance is 2.9585(8) Å] is substantial enough to hold the compound in a pseudo-cyclic structure.
Figure 3.1  Structure of the complex (2-HgClC₆H₄)P(S)Ph₂ 3.13 showing the atom numbering scheme. Thermal ellipsoids are shown at the 50% probability level.

Table 3.1  Selected structural parameters for the complex (2-HgClC₆H₄)P(S)Ph₂ 3.13.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Lengths (Å)</th>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Angles (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – S(1)</td>
<td>1.9745(11)</td>
<td>S(1) – P(1) – C(11)</td>
<td>114.51(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – C(11)</td>
<td>1.824(3)</td>
<td>P(1) – C(11) – C(12)</td>
<td>121.3(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(11) – C(12)</td>
<td>1.400(4)</td>
<td>C(11) – C(12) – Hg(1)</td>
<td>121.7(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(12) – Hg(1)</td>
<td>2.068(3)</td>
<td>C(12) – Hg(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>173.34(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hg(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>2.3273(8)</td>
<td>C(11) – P(1) – C(31)</td>
<td>106.25(14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S(1)---Hg(1)</td>
<td>2.9585(8)</td>
<td>C(21) – P(1) – C(11)</td>
<td>105.86(14)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In order to continue our investigations into ligands which contain soft donor ligands we decided to investigate the cyclometallation of PhP(S)(NEt$_2$)$_2$ 3.14, which is capable of forming a five-membered metallacyclic ring via coordination of either the nitrogen or the softer sulfur atom. Craig et al.$^{(25)}$ have previously shown that the ligand PhP(S)(NMe$_2$)$_2$ undergoes ortho-lithiation on the phenyl ring. The ethyl analogue 3.14 behaves in an identical manner and the resulting ortho-lithiated compound can be further reacted with HgCl$_2$ to give the orthomercurated compound 3.15 in good yields (Scheme 3.5). Like 3.13, there is a peak in the mass spectrum ($m/z$ 769.266) corresponding to the diaryl mercury complex ([2-Hg(C$_6$H$_4$P(S)(NEt$_2$)$_2$)$_2$+H]+). However, the $^{31}$P-$^1$H NMR spectrum shows a $^{31}$P-$^{199}$Hg coupling of 414 Hz, very similar to the coupling seen in 3.13. Microelemental analysis supports the structure being the mercury chloride species 3.15.

![Scheme 3.5](image)

**Scheme 3.5** Scheme for the synthesis of 3.15, via the ortho-lithiated intermediate.

### 3.2.2 Synthesis of cycloaurated gold(III) phosphine chalcogeni
des

The reaction of both the ortho-mercurated sulfide complexes 3.10b and 3.13, and the selenide complex 3.10c, with [Me$_4$N][AuCl$_4$] and [Me$_4$N]Cl in acetonitrile gave the cycloaurated complexes 3.16b and 3.16c in moderate yields (Scheme 3.6). When the donor atom was selenium, the transmetallation reaction proceeded in three hours compared to the 24 hours required with the sulfur donor. Both 3.16b and 3.16c are yellow micro-crystalline compounds; however 3.16c appears to be moisture sensitive and when isolated in the solid form it decomposes over time (even in darkness) to give a black powder. Complex 3.15 also readily transmetallates in an analogous manner; when reacted with [Me$_4$N][AuCl$_4$] the cycloaurated complex 3.17 was isolated as a fluffy pale yellow solid. All of the transmetallation reactions gave adequate to good yields of cycloaurated product.
Attempts at synthesising cycloaurated Ph₃P=O via transmetallation from 3.10a were unsuccessful. The same synthetic methodology as for 3.10b and 3.10c gave a variety of unidentified compounds that were observed by $^{31}$P{¹H} NMR spectroscopy of the reaction mixture. Longer reaction times and changing the solvent from acetonitrile to DMSO resulted in complete loss of 3.10a and evidence of the cycloaurated product in ESI mass spectrometry. Unfortunately, despite numerous attempts, the cycloaurated species could not be isolated.

In the early studies on transmetallation reactions, Parish proposed that the initial step involves coordination of the neutral donor to the gold atom to form a bimetallic species (see Scheme 1.8, Chapter One). Considering the hard oxygen of Ph₃P=O is a poor donor to Au(III) it is not surprising that the reaction is sluggish as the initial coordination step would not occur easily. In the earlier work on ortho-manganated triphenylphosphine chalcogenides Depree et al. suggested that incorporation of Ph₃P=O into a five-membered ring results in an unfavourable bond angle at the oxygen (the P-O-M angle). This may also be a factor in the inability to isolate cycloaurated Ph₃P=O.
3.2.3 X-ray crystal structures of 2-AuCl₂(C₆H₄)P(S)Ph₂ 3.16b, 2-AuCl₂(C₆H₄)P(Se)Ph₂ 3.16c and 2-AuCl₂(C₆H₄)P(S)(NEt₂)₂ 3.17

X-ray crystal structure analyses on both 3.16b and 3.16c were carried out, and the compounds are iso-structural and isomorphous. The molecular structures and atom numbering schemes are shown in Figures 3.2 and 3.3 respectively, with important bond parameters presented in Table 3.2. Full tables of structural parameters along with atomic coordinates and anisotropic displacement parameters can be found on the supplementary CD.

In each case, a new five-membered metallacyclic ring has formed with the gold bonded in the ortho position of one of the phenyl rings and either a sulfur or a selenium atom as the neutral donor. Two chloride ligands complete the coordination sphere around the metal. As expected, the geometry around the gold atom is essentially square planar. The greatest deviations from the gold coordination planes are 0.0681(14) Å (C12) for 3.16b and 0.0643(8) Å (C12) for 3.16c. Because of the greater trans influence of the carbon-bonded phenyl ring, the Au(1)-Cl(1) bonds [2.3635(11) and 2.3628(6) Å] are longer than the Au(1)-Cl(2) bonds [2.3094(12) and 2.3222(6) Å for 3.16b and 3.16c respectively]. In addition, the Au-Cl bond trans to the selenium atom [2.3222(6) Å] is longer than the Au-Cl bond trans to the sulfur atom [2.3094(12) Å] owing to the greater trans influence of the P=Se group.

Coordination to the metal has lengthened the P=E bond [(from 1.950(3) Å in Ph₃P=S(24) to 2.0324(16) Å in 3.16b and from 2.112(1) Å in Ph₃P=Se(27) to 2.1839(6) in 3.16c)]. The Au-S bond is 2.3073(11) Å and this is comparable with other Au(III)-S bond lengths where the sulfur originates from a tertiary phosphine sulfide group. (28, 29) Likewise, the Au-Se bond in 3.16c is comparable with similar complexes (30) and in conjunction with the P-Se bond length suggests a strong gold-selenium interaction. The bite angle of the ligand is close to 90° for both 3.16b and 3.16c. The metallacyclic rings of both the sulfide 3.16b and the selenide 3.16c complex are significantly puckered, which contrasts to the ortho-manganated analogues 3.1b and 3.1c, were the metallacyclic rings are planar. The greatest deviations from the mean metallacyclic plane are P(1) [0.3002(14) Å above the plane] and S(1) [0.3016(11)Å below the plane]. Likewise, for the selenide complex, P(1) and Se(1) show the greatest deviations from the mean plane [+0.3114(8) and -0.2976(6) Å respectively].
Figure 3.2 Molecular diagram of \((2\text{-AuCl}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)\text{P}(\text{S})\text{Ph}_2\) 3.16b showing the atom labelling scheme. Thermal ellipsoids are shown at the 50% probability level.

Figure 3.3 Molecular diagram of \((2\text{-AuCl}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)\text{P}(\text{Se})\text{Ph}_2\) 3.16c indicating the atom numbering scheme, with thermal ellipsoids at the 50% probability level.
Table 3.2  Selected structural parameters for the complexes 3.16b and 3.16c.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond lengths (Å)</th>
<th>3.16b (E=S)</th>
<th>3.16c (E=Se)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>2.3635(11)</td>
<td>2.3628(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>2.3094(12)</td>
<td>2.3222(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(12) – Au(1)</td>
<td>2.045(5)</td>
<td>2.049(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E(1) – Au(1)</td>
<td>2.3073(11)</td>
<td>2.4091(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – E(1)</td>
<td>2.0324(16)</td>
<td>2.1839(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – C(11)</td>
<td>1.794(4)</td>
<td>1.783(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(11) – C(12)</td>
<td>1.401(6)</td>
<td>1.406(3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond angles (°)</th>
<th>3.16b (E=S)</th>
<th>3.16c (E=Se)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cl(1) – Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>90.64(4)</td>
<td>90.52(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl(1) – Au(1) – E(1)</td>
<td>86.25(4)</td>
<td>84.876(18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E(1) – Au(1) – C(12)</td>
<td>90.02(13)</td>
<td>91.16(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(12) – Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>93.23(13)</td>
<td>93.60(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – E(1) – P(1)</td>
<td>95.24(5)</td>
<td>91.759(18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E(1) – P(1) – C(11)</td>
<td>104.57(15)</td>
<td>104.17(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(11) – C(12) – Au(1)</td>
<td>120.2(3)</td>
<td>120.99(18)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3.3 gives the results of a search of the Cambridge Crystallographic Database for structures of triphenylphosphine chalcogenide ligands where the chalcogenide atom acts as an η¹ donor. In these complexes the chalcogenide atom is not constrained so the preferred geometry around the chalcogenide atom can be ascertained. Inspection of Table 3.3 shows that as a result of cycloauration the angles at the chalcogenide atoms (P-E-Au) in the gold complexes are extremely acute – they fall well below the mean P-E-M angles. This further supports the suggestion that the analogous Ph₃P=O complex could not be formed because of an unfavourable angle at the oxygen when Ph₃P=O is constrained in a ring system.
Table 3.3 Results of a search of the Cambridge Crystallographic Database for $\eta^1$ coordinated Ph$_3$P=E ligands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Ph$_3$P=O</th>
<th>Ph$_3$P=S</th>
<th>Ph$_3$P=Se</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sample number</td>
<td>317</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent XPPh$_3$ moieties</td>
<td>543</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean P-E-M angle (°)</td>
<td>158.36</td>
<td>108.13</td>
<td>105.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Std deviation in P-E-M angle (°)</td>
<td>10.85</td>
<td>5.13</td>
<td>4.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range P-E-M angle (°)</td>
<td>124-180</td>
<td>95-116</td>
<td>100-111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-E-Au angle (°)</td>
<td>95.24 (3.16b)</td>
<td>91.759 (3.16c)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to confirm that in 3.17 the neutral coordinating donor atom is the soft sulfur, an X-ray crystallographic study was carried out. The compound crystallised in the space group $Pna2_1$, with two unique molecules in the asymmetric unit. One of these molecules is depicted in Figure 3.4, clearly showing that the neutral donor is the sulfur and not the nitrogen. The atom labelling scheme is also shown in Figure 3.4, with important bond parameters of both molecules in Table 3.4.

In both cases the coordination around the gold atom is essentially square planar, with the largest deviations from the coordination plane of the metal 0.0183(17) Å (C2, molecule A) and 0.0181(11) Å (Au1, molecule B). Like 3.16b and 3.16c the bite angle of the ligand is approximately 90°. The P-S-Au angles are 94.58(6)° (molecule 1) and 95.30(6)° (molecule 2) which are again severely acute and leads to the metallacyclic ring being extremely puckered.

In both molecules it is the sulfur and phosphorus atoms that show the greatest deviation from the metallacyclic ring. The Au-S bond lengths are 2.3108(14) Å (molecule A) and 2.3064(13) Å (molecule B), which are comparable to the Au-S bond length in 3.16b (2.3073(11) Å). As expected, the Au-Cl bonds trans to the carbon [2.3700(13), 2.3715(12) Å] are longer than those trans to the sulfur [2.3178(13), 2.3205(13) Å].
Figure 3.4 Molecular structure of \((2\text{-AuCl}_{2}\text{C}_6\text{H}_4)\text{P(S)(NEt}_2\text{)}_2\) \(3.17\) showing one of the unique molecules in the asymmetric unit. Hydrogen atoms have been excluded for clarity and thermal ellipsoids are shown at the 50% probability level.

Interestingly, substituting two phenyl groups (3.16b) for amine groups (3.17) results in an increase in Au-Cl bond lengths. The Au-Cl bond \textit{trans} to the sulfur in 3.16b is 2.3094(12) Å – this increases to 2.3178(13) and 2.3205(13) Å in 3.17 indicating that the amine substituted ligand has a greater \textit{trans} influence than the phenyl substituted ligand.
Table 3.4  Selected structural parameters for the complex (2-AuCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)P(S)(NEt$_2$)$_2$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond lengths (Å)</th>
<th>Molecule A</th>
<th>Molecule B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>2.3700(13)</td>
<td>2.3715(12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>2.3178(13)</td>
<td>2.3205(13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – S(1)</td>
<td>2.3108(14)</td>
<td>2.3064(13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – C(2)</td>
<td>2.059(5)</td>
<td>2.051(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – S(1)</td>
<td>2.0403(19)</td>
<td>2.0451(18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – C(1)</td>
<td>1.781(5)</td>
<td>1.776(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(1) – C(2)</td>
<td>1.398(7)</td>
<td>1.414(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>1.628(5)</td>
<td>1.638(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – N(2)</td>
<td>1.623(4)</td>
<td>1.619(4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond angles (°)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cl(1) – Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>91.49(5)</td>
<td>90.28(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl(2) – Au(1) – C(2)</td>
<td>93.21(15)</td>
<td>92.90(15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl(1) – Au(1) – S(1)</td>
<td>85.88(5)</td>
<td>86.43(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(2) – Au(1) – S(1)</td>
<td>89.42(14)</td>
<td>90.37(15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – S(1) – P(1)</td>
<td>94.58(6)</td>
<td>95.30(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S(1) – P(1) – C(1)</td>
<td>102.91(17)</td>
<td>102.68(17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P(1) – C(1) – C(2)</td>
<td>116.2(4)</td>
<td>117.1(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(1) – C(2) – Au(1)</td>
<td>119.3(4)</td>
<td>118.6(4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.4 Spectroscopic and mass spectrometric characterisation of cycloaurated triphenylphosphine chalcogenides

The presence of phosphorus in these compounds introduces a powerful ($^{31}$P) NMR spectroscopic probe which aids in both characterisation of the final products and in monitoring the extent of (e.g. transmetallation) reactions. In the iso-electronic iminophosphorane complexes we have seen a small change in chemical shift of the compounds upon ortho-mercuration of the ligand followed by a larger predictable downfield shift of approximately 40 ppm after transmetallation to the gold ($^{32, 33}$) attributed to the phosphorus entering a cyclic
environment. The trend is not as obvious in this series, with only small unpredictable changes between the ligand, ortho-mercurated and cycloaurated complexes hence other effects must also be contributing to the $^{31}$P chemical shift. Table 3.5 presents the $^{31}$P{${}^1$H} NMR data for the complexes studied.

As discussed by Glidewell et al., the coordination of phosphine selenides to metal centres results in significant deshielding of the selenium nucleus and a decrease in the $^1J_{Se-P}$ coupling constant – this is observed in the series of Ph$_3$P=Se complexes. There is only a small change (47 Hz) upon mercuration which indicates little interaction between the selenium and the mercury atom. Transmetallation to gold sees a decrease in the value of $^1J_{P-Se}$ by 259 Hz which indicates a strong selenium–gold interaction. In addition, the value of $^1J_{P-Se}$ is related to P-Se bond lengths in the solid state – the longer the P-Se bond the smaller $^1J_{P-Se}$ is. This is in accordance with X-ray crystallographic data – the P-Se bond length in Ph$_3$P=Se is 2.112(1) Å and $^1J_{P-Se}$ is 731 Hz and in the cycloaurated complex the P-Se bond length is 2.1839(6) Å with $^1J_{P-Se} = 425$ Hz.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ligand</th>
<th>Ortho-mercurated complex</th>
<th>Cycloaurated complex</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ph$_3$P=S</td>
<td>44.0</td>
<td>48.2 ($^3J_{P-Hg} = 385$ Hz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ph$_3$P=Se</td>
<td>36.0 ($^1J_{P-Se} = 731$ Hz)</td>
<td>41.4 ($^3J_{P-Se} = 684$ Hz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhP(S)(NEt$_2$)$_2$</td>
<td>78.4</td>
<td>83.1 ($^3J_{P-Hg} = 414$ Hz)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The P=E vibrations in Ph$_3$P=S and Ph$_3$P=Se occur at 638 cm$^{-1}$ and 561 cm$^{-1}$ respectively. Upon coordination to the metal this value decreases to 603 cm$^{-1}$ for 3.13 and further still to 597 cm$^{-1}$ for 3.16b. In the case of the selenide derivatives, the mercury compound 3.10c shows no change in the P-Se vibration upon metellation, however coordination to the gold (3.16c) gives a shift to 545 cm$^{-1}$. This further supports the inference from the NMR data that there is little interaction between the selenium and mercury. Likewise, the ligand
PhP(S)(NEt$_2$)$_2$ 3.14 has a P=S vibration at 604 cm$^{-1}$ which moves to lower wavenumbers for the mercury complex 3.15 (597 cm$^{-1}$) and the cycloaurated species 3.17 (586 cm$^{-1}$). These decreases mirror those seen by King and McQuillan, and are attributed to a weakening of the P-E $\pi$ bonds upon coordination to the metal.$^{(36)}$

### 3.2.5 Reaction of (2-AuCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)P(S)(NEt$_2$)$_2$, 3.17, with thiosalicylic acid

Because gold(III) thiosalicylate derivatives often show a greater biological activity than the parent dichloride complex,$^{(37-40)}$ compound 3.17 was reacted with a molar equivalent of thiosalicylic acid and excess Me$_3$N in methanol to give the thiosalicylate complex 3.18 in good yields (Scheme 3.7). Previously with gold(III) and other transition metal complexes the dianionic thiosalicylate ligand is coordinated so that the two soft sigma donor ligands are mutually *cis* to each other due to the *anti*-symbiotic effect.$^{(41, 42)}$ Therefore, it is assumed that 3.18 is the isomer where the carbon and the thiosalicylate sulfur are *cis* to each other as opposed to the thermodynamically less favoured isomer with the carbon and oxygen in *cis* arrangement.

![Scheme 3.7 Scheme for the synthesis of the thiosalicylate derivative of the cycloaurated phosphine sulfide (2-AuCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)P(S)(NEt$_2$)$_2$ 3.18.](image)

### 3.2.6 Biological activity

Since the discovery of the anticancer activity of *cisplatin*, Au(III) complexes, which are both isoelectronic and isosteric with Pt(II) have routinely been screened for biological activity with some showing promising results.$^{(43-45)}$ For this reason, compounds 3.16b and 3.17 were screened for anti-tumour activity against the P388 murine leukemia cell line, using the methods described in Appendix 1. Compound 3.16b shows poor activity with an IC$_{50}$ > 12500
ng/mL, however the activity of 3.17 is more promising with an IC$_{50}$ value of 3474 ng/mL. Replacement of the cis chloride ligands of 3.17 with the chelating dianionic thiosalicylate ligand (3.18) results in an increase in biological activity (IC$_{50}$ = 1522 ng/mL).

3.3 Conclusions
Three new ortho-metallated gold(III) complexes containing phosphine chalcogenide ligands have been synthesised and fully characterised – these are rare examples of cycloaurated complexes which contain a neutral donor ligand other than nitrogen. The complexes with the neutral sulfur donors show a similar stability to the cycloaurated C,N’ complexes, which is interesting as they contain a oxidising gold(III) centre and a reducing phosphine chalcogenide ligand. Reactivity is also similar to the C,N’ auracycles - the cis chloride ligands can be replaced by the chelating dianionic thiosalicylate ligand to give a bi-metallacyclic complex which shows better biological activity than the parent complex against the P388 murine leukemia cell line.

3.4 Experimental

3.4.1 General
The compounds 3.9, 3.10a, 3.10b and 3.1b were prepared by literature procedures.\textsuperscript{(15, 46)} HgCl$_2$, PhP(NEt$_2$)$_2$ (Aldrich) and n-butyllithium (2.0 M in cyclohexane, Aldrich) were used as received. [Me$_4$N][AuCl$_4$] was prepared by the addition of [Me$_4$N]Cl to H[AuCl$_4$], as described in Appendix 1, where the general characterisation conditions can also be located.

3.4.2 Syntheses

Preparation of 2-Hg(C$_6$H$_4$P(Se)Ph)$_2$ 3.10c
2-Hg(C$_6$H$_4$PPh)$_2$ 3.9 (0.300 g, 0.42 mmol) and grey selenium powder (0.066 g, 0.84 mmol) were added to dry degassed toluene (50 mL) and placed in an ultrasonic bath at 50 °C until the
majority of the Se had disappeared (~16 hours). The toluene was removed under vacuum and the white solid extracted into dichloromethane (3 × 10 mL). Petroleum spirits (30 mL) was added to the filtrate and storage at -20 °C gave 2-Hg(C₆H₄P(Se)Ph₂)₂ 3.10c as a white solid (0.225 g, 61%).

Found: C 49.1, H 3.3, N <0.2, C₃₅H₂₈P₂Se₂Hg requires C 49.1, H 3.2, N 0.0%.

NMR: ¹H: δ 7.05 (m, 4H, H-5 and H-6), 7.40 (m, 2H, H-4), 7.42 (m, 8H, H-9), 7.47 (m, 4H, H-10), 7.68 (m, 8H, H-8), 7.78 (m, 2H, H-3); ¹³C{¹H}: δ 125.6 (d, 3JPC = 12.6 Hz, C-5), 128.6 (d, 3JPC = 12.6 Hz, C-9), 130.3 (d, 4JPC = 3.6 Hz, C-4), 131.6 (d, 4JPC = 2.4 Hz, C-10), 132.3 (d, 2JPC = 15.8 Hz, C-6), 132.4 (d, 1JPC = 75.2 Hz, C-7), 133.2 (d, 2JPC = 9.7 Hz, C-8), 140.2 (d, 1JPC = 84.9 Hz, C-1), 140.8 (d, 3JPC = 19.4 Hz, C-3), 175.4 (d, 2JPC = 25.1 Hz, C-2); ³¹P{¹H}: δ 41.4 (3JHP = 284 Hz, 1JSeP = 684 Hz) ppm. See Scheme 3.8 for the NMR numbering system.

ESI-MS: m/z: 904.964 (100%, [M+Na]⁺, calc 904.960), 841.040 (44%, [M-Se+O+Na]⁺, calc 841.038), 819.064 (20%, [M-Se+O+H], calc 819.056), 882.981 (15%, [M+H]⁺, calc 882.978); AgNO₃ added: 988.880 (100%, [M+Ag]⁺, calc 988.876), 926.957 (25%, [M-Se+O+Ag]⁺, calc 926.954).

IR: ν(P=Se) 562 (m) cm⁻¹.

Scheme 3.8  NMR numbering scheme for 2-Hg(C₆H₄P(Se)Ph₂)₂ 3.10c.
Preparation of (2-HgClC_6H_4)P(S)Ph_2 3.13

(2-Mn(CO)_4C_6H_4)P(S)Ph_2 3.1b (0.406 g, 0.88 mmol) and HgCl_2 (0.477 g, 1.77 mmol) were refluxed in methanol (15 mL) for 3 hours. The white solid that formed was removed by filtration and the filtrate reduced in volume to give a white solid. This was subsequently redissolved in minimal dichloromethane and passed through a column of Celite. Removal of the dichloromethane gave (2-HgClC_6H_4)P(S)Ph_2 3.13 as a white solid (0.339 g, 73%).

Found: C 40.8, H 2.7, N 0.0; C_{18}H_{14}PSClHg requires C 40.8, H 2.7, N 0.0%

NMR: \( ^1H \): \( \delta \) 7.30 (m, 1H, H-5), 7.39 (m, 1H, H-6), 7.47 (m, 4H, H-9), 7.55 (m, 3H, H-4 and H-10), 7.63 (m, 4H, H-8). 7.70 (m, 1H, H-3); \( ^31C\{^1H\} \): \( \delta \) 127.5 (d, \( J_{PC} = 11.8 \) Hz, C-5), 129.0 (d, \( J_{PC} = 12.7 \) Hz, C-9), 131.6 (d, \( J_{PC} = 3.5 \) Hz, C-4), 132.1 (d, \( J_{PC} = 86.3 \) Hz, C-7), 132.3 (d, \( J_{PC} = 3 \) Hz, C-10), 132.6 (d, \( J_{PC} = 10.6 \) Hz, C-8), 133.5 (d, \( J_{PC} = 13.8 \) Hz, C-6), 136.8 (d, \( J_{PC} = 89.0 \) Hz, C-1), 138.9 (d, \( J_{PC} = 17.1 \) Hz, C-3), 155.8 (d, \( J_{PC} = 19.8 \) Hz, C-2); \( ^31P\{^1H\} \): \( \delta \) 48.2 (\( J_{HP} = 385 \) Hz) ppm (see Scheme 3.9 for the NMR numbering system).

ESI-MS: \( m/z \): 789.093 (100%, [2-Hg(C_6H_4P(S)Ph_2)_2+H]^+), calc 789.089), 1023.016 (20%, [2M-Cl]^+, calc 1023.018), 552.980 (9%, [M+Na]^+, calc 552.983).

IR: \( \nu(P=S) \) 603 (m) cm\(^{-1}\).

Preparation of (2-AuCl_2C_6H_4)P(S)Ph_2 3.16b

2-Hg[(C_6H_4)P(S)Ph_2]_2 3.10b (0.100 g, 0.13 mmol), [Me_4N][AuCl_4] (0.105 g, 0.26 mmol) and [Me_4N]Cl (0.014 g, 0.13 mmol) were stirred overnight in degassed acetonitrile (15 mL) in a foil-covered flask. The acetonitrile was removed under vacuum and the residue extracted into dichloromethane (2 × 10 mL) and filtered. Slow addition of diethyl ether to the filtrate produced yellow crystals of (2-AuCl_2C_6H_4)P(S)Ph_2 3.16b (0.060 g, 42%).

Found: C 38.4, H 2.6, N 0.0; C_{18}H_{14}PSClAu requires C 38.5, H 2.5, N 0.0%.
NMR: $^1$H: δ 6.97 (m, 1H, H-6), 7.30 (m, 1H, H-5), 7.45 (m, 1H, H-4), 7.64 (m, 4H, H-9), 7.72 (m, 2H, H-10), 7.76 (m, 4H, H-8) 8.46 (m, 1H, H-3); $^{13}$C{$^1$H}: δ 125.0 (d, $^1$J$_{PC}$ = 83.4 Hz, C-7), 127.9 (d, $^3$J$_{PC}$ = 12.6 Hz, C-5), 130.2 (d, $^3$J$_{PC}$ = 13.7, C-9), 131.9 (d, $^2$J$_{PC}$ = 14.3 Hz, C-6), 133.2 (d, $^2$J$_{PC}$ = 11.5 Hz, C-8), 134.9 (d, $^4$J$_{PC}$ = 3.3 Hz, C-4), 135.0 (d, $^4$J$_{PC}$ = 2.7 Hz, C-10), 137.2 (d, $^3$J$_{PC}$ = 14.8 Hz, C-3), 140.5 (d, $^1$J$_{PC}$ = 100.0 Hz, C-1), 152.0 (d, $^2$J$_{PC}$ = 16.1 Hz, C-2); $^{31}$P{$^1$H}: δ 56.4 ppm (see Scheme 3.9 for the NMR numbering system).

ESI-MS: m/z: 578.999 (100%, [M-Cl+OMe+Na]$^+$, calc 578.998), 1081.002 (15%, [2M-2Cl+OMe]$^+$, calc 1080.999), 1135.010 (14%, [2M-2Cl+2OMe+Na]$^+$, calc 1135.008)

IR: ν(P=S) 597 (m) cm$^{-1}$.

Alternative synthesis:
(2-HgClC$_6$H$_4$)P(S)Ph$_2$ 3.13 (0.250 g, 0.47 mmol), [Me$_4$N][AuCl$_4$] (0.195 g, 0.47 mmol) and [Me$_4$N]Cl (0.052 g, 0.47 mmol) were stirred in degassed acetonitrile (20 mL) for 24 hours in a foil-covered flask. The acetonitrile was removed under vacuum and the residue extracted into dichloromethane (2 × 10 mL) and filtered. Slow addition of diethyl ether to the filtrate produced yellow crystals of (2-AuCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)P(S)Ph$_2$ 3.16b (0.121 g, 46%). The product was identified by NMR and ESI mass spectrometry.

Preparation of (2-AuCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)P(Se)Ph$_2$ 3.16c
2-Hg[(C$_6$H$_4$)P(Se)Ph$_2$]$_2$ 3.10c (0.100 g, 0.11 mmol), [Me$_4$N][AuCl$_4$] (0.094 g, 0.22 mmol) and [Me$_4$N]Cl (0.012 g, 0.11 mmol) were stirred in degassed acetonitrile (10 mL) for 3 hours in a foil covered flask. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the resulting yellow solid extracted into dichloromethane (2 × 10 mL) and filtered. The resulting filtrate was treated with diethyl ether (20 mL) and storage at -20 °C gave yellow crystals of (2-AuCl$_2$C$_6$H$_4$)P(Se)Ph$_2$ 3.16c (0.082 g, 61%).

NMR: $^1$H: δ 6.87 (m, 1H, H-6), 7.29 (m, 1H, H-5), 7.45 (m, 1H, H-4), 7.64 (m, 4H, H-9), 7.71 (m, 2H, H-10), 7.75 (m, 4H, H-8), 8.51 (m, 1H, H-3); $^{13}$C{$^1$H}: δ 124.5 (d, $^1$J$_{PC}$ = 75.4 Hz, C-7), 127.9 (d, $^3$J$_{PC}$ = 12.6 Hz, C-5), 130.2 (d, $^3$J$_{PC}$ = 13.7, C-9), 131.9 (d, $^2$J$_{PC}$ = 14.3 Hz, C-6), 133.2 (d, $^2$J$_{PC}$ = 11.5 Hz, C-8), 134.9 (d, $^4$J$_{PC}$ = 3.3 Hz, C-4), 135.0 (d, $^4$J$_{PC}$ = 2.7 Hz, C-10), 137.2 (d, $^3$J$_{PC}$ = 14.8 Hz, C-3), 140.5 (d, $^1$J$_{PC}$ = 100.0 Hz, C-1), 152.0 (d, $^2$J$_{PC}$ = 16.1 Hz, C-2); $^{31}$P{$^1$H}: δ 56.4 ppm (see Scheme 3.9 for the NMR numbering system).
Hz, C-7), 127.5 (d, $^3J_{PC} = 13.0 \text{ Hz, C-5}$), 130.2 (d, $^3J_{PC} = 13.4 \text{ Hz, C-9}$), 132.6 (d, $^2J_{PC} = 13.9 \text{ Hz, C-6}$), 133.5 (d, $^2J_{PC} = 11.9 \text{ Hz, C-8}$), 134.8 (d, $^4J_{PC} = 3.0 \text{ Hz, C-4}$), 134.9 (d, $^4J_{PC} = 3.0 \text{ Hz, C-10}$), 138.5 (d, $^3J_{PC} = 14.8 \text{ Hz, C-3}$), 140.9 (d, $^1J_{PC} = 96.0 \text{ Hz, C-1}$), 150.2 (d, $^2J_{PC} = 19.4 \text{ Hz, C-2}$); $^{31}\text{P}\{^1\text{H}\}$ δ 38.8 ($^1J_{SeP} = 425 \text{ Hz}$) ppm (see Scheme 3.9 for the NMR labelling system).


IR: $\nu$(P-Se) 562 (m) cm$^{-1}$.

![Scheme 3.9](image)

**Scheme 3.9**  NMR numbering scheme for **3.13** ($M = \text{Hg, } E = S$), **3.16b** ($M = \text{Au, } E = S$) and **3.16c** ($M = \text{Au, } E = \text{Se}$).

**Preparation of PhP(S)(NEt$_2$)$_2$ 3.14**

PhP(NEt$_2$)$_2$ (2 mL, 7.9 mmol) and sulfur (0.275 g, 8.6 mmol) were stirred under a nitrogen environment overnight in dry degassed hexanes (50 mL). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give a pale yellow oil that failed to crystallise (1.40 g, 62%).

Found: C 59.3, H 9.1, N 9.9; C$_{14}$H$_{25}$N$_2$PS requires C 59.1, H 8.9, N 9.9%

NMR: $^1\text{H}$: δ 1.04 (t, 12H, H-8), 3.13 (m, 8H, H-7), 7.42 (m, 3H, H-3, H-4 and H-5), 7.93 (m, 2H, H-2 and H-6); $^{13}\text{C}\{^1\text{H}\}$: δ 13.5 (d, $^3J_{PC} = 4 \text{ Hz, C-8}$), 39.4 (d, $^2J_{PC} = 4 \text{ Hz, C-7}$), 128.2 (d, $^3J_{PC} = 14 \text{ Hz, C-3 and C-5}$), 130.9 (d, $^4J_{PC} = 3 \text{ Hz, C-4}$), 131.7 (d, $^2J_{PC} = 10 \text{ Hz, C-2 and C-6}$), 135.7 (d, $^1J_{PC} = 123 \text{ Hz, C-1}$); $^{31}\text{P}\{^1\text{H}\}$: δ 78.4 ppm (see Scheme 3.10 for the NMR numbering system).

IR: \( \nu(P=S) = 604 \text{ cm}^{-1} \).

**Preparation of (2-HgClC_6H_4)P(S)(NEt_2)_2** 3.15

PhP(S)(NEt_2)_2 3.14 (0.500 g, 1.76 mmol) was dissolved in dry, degassed diethyl ether (20 mL). n-Butyllithium (0.9 mL, 1.76 mmol) was added dropwise to give a yellow solution that was stirred for 22 hours. HgCl_2 (0.478 g, 1.76 mmol) in THF (5 mL) was added dropwise and the resulting grey solution stirred for a further 4 hours. The grey solid that had formed was filtered off and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The residue was redissolved in dichloromethane (20 mL) and refiltered. The solvent was reduced in volume (to ~ 5 mL) and hexanes were added until the solution went cloudy. Storage at -20 °C gave white crystals of (2-HgClC_6H_4)P(S)(NEt_2)_2 3.15 (0.503 g, 55%).

Found: C 32.6, H 4.6, N 5.3; \( \text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_2\text{PSClHg} \) requires C 32.4, H 4.7, N 5.4%.

NMR: \(^1\text{H}: \delta 1.05 (t, 12H, H-8), 3.12 (m, 8H, H-7), 7.32 (m, 1H, H-5), 7.47 (m, 1H, H-4), 7.57 (m, 1H, H-3), 7.84 (m, 1H, H-6); \(^{13}\text{C}[^1\text{H}]: \delta 13.6 (d, ^3J_{PC} = 3.1 \text{ Hz}, \text{C}-8), 39.9 (d, ^2J_{PC} = 3.6 \text{ Hz}, \text{C}-7), 127.1 (d, ^3J_{PC} = 11.4 \text{ Hz}, \text{C}-5), 130.8 (d, ^2J_{PC} = 9.3 \text{ Hz}, \text{C}-6), 131.0 (d, ^4J_{PC} = 3.4 \text{ Hz}, \text{C}-4), 138.7 (d, ^3J_{PC} = 20.5 \text{ Hz}, \text{C}-3), 139.7 (d, ^1J_{PC} = 132.1 \text{ Hz}, \text{C}-1), 156.9 (d, ^2J_{PC} = 22.8 \text{ Hz}, \text{C}-2); \(^{31}\text{P}[^1\text{H}]: \delta 83.1 (^{3}J_{HP} = 414 \text{ Hz}) \text{ ppm (see Scheme 3.10 for the NMR labelling system).} \)

ESI-MS: \( m/z: \) 1003.188 (100%, \([2M-\text{Cl}]^+\), calc 1003.186), 769.266 (55%, \([2-\text{Hg(C}_6\text{H}_4\text{P(S)(NEt}_2)_2+\text{H}]^+\), calc 769.258), 543.071 (24%, \([\text{M+Na}]^+\), calc 543.068).

IR: \( \nu(P=S) = 597 (s) \text{ cm}^{-1} \).
Preparation of (2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)P(S)(NEt₂)₂ 3.17
(2-HgClC₆H₄)P(S)(NEt₂)₂ 3.15 (0.150 g, 0.29 mmol), [Me₄N][AuCl₄] (0.119 g, 0.29 mmol) and [Me₄N]Cl (0.032 g, 0.29 mmol) were stirred overnight in a foil-covered flask of degassed acetonitrile (15 mL), under a nitrogen atmosphere. The acetonitrile was removed under reduced pressure and the residue extracted into dichloromethane (2 × 10 mL). Hexanes (20 mL) were added and the solution stored at -20 °C to give fluffy yellow crystals of (2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)P(S)(NEt₂)₂ 3.17 (0.106 g, 66%).

Found: C 30.0, H 4.5, N 4.9; C₁₄H₂₄N₂PSCl₂Au requires 30.5, H 4.4, N 5.1%.

NMR: ¹H: δ 1.20 (t, 12H, H-8), 3.25 (m, 8H, H-7), 7.11 (m, 1H, H-6), 7.30 (m, 1H, H-5), 7.40 (m, 1H, H-4), 8.39 (m, 1H, H-3); ¹³C{¹H}: δ 13.9 (³JPC = 2.5 Hz, C-8), 40.7 (²JPC = 4.7 Hz, C-7), 127.4 (³JPC = 13.1 Hz, C-5), 129.9 (³JPC = 11.5 Hz, C-6), 134.7 (⁴JPC = 2.9 Hz, C-4), 135.8 (³JPC = 139.0 Hz, C-1), 136.2 (³JPC = 17.3 Hz, C-3), 144.0 (²JPC = 24.6 Hz, C-2); ³¹P{¹H}: δ 79.4 ppm (see Scheme 3.10 for the NMR numbering system).


IR: ν(P=S) = 586 (m) cm⁻¹.

Scheme 3.10  NMR numbering scheme for 3.14 (M=H), 3.15 (M=Hg) and 3.17 (M=Au).

Reaction of (2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)P(S)(NEt₂)₂ 3.17 with thiosalicylic acid
(2-AuCl₂C₆H₄)P(S)(NEt₂)₂ 3.17 (0.051 g, 0.09 mmol) and thiosalicylic acid (0.014 g, 0.09 mmol) were stirred in methanol (10 mL). To the dark orange solution Me₃N (1 mL, excess) was added resulting in the solution becoming immediately lighter. The solution was stirred
for 90 minutes in a foil covered flask before water (50 mL) was added to produce a fine precipitate. Stirring was continued for a further 12 hours, the solution was filtered and the yellow solid washed well with water (2 × 10 mL) and diethyl ether (1 × 10 mL). Drying under vacuum gave 0.043 g (76%) of the thiosalicylate derivative 3.18.

Found: C 39.9, H 4.5, N 4.5, C$_2$H$_{28}$N$_2$O$_2$PS$_2$Au requires C 39.9, H 4.5, N 4.4%.

NMR: $^1$H: $\delta$ 1.14 (t, 12H, H-8), 3.25 (m, 8H, H-7), 7.12 (m, 1H, H-6), 7.18 (m, 2H, H-11 and H-12), 7.27 (m, 1H, H-5), 7.39 (m, 2H, H-4 and H-10), 7.93 (m, 1H, H-3), 8.16 (m, 1H, H-13); $^{13}$C($^1$H): $\delta$ 13.7 ($^3$J$^P_C$ = 2.8 Hz, C-8), 40.4 ($^5$J$^P_C$ = 4.5 Hz, C-7), 125.4 (C-12), 127.0 ($^3$J$^P_C$ = 13.0 Hz, C-5), 129.9 (C-10 and C-11), 130.4 ($^5$J$^P_C$ = 10.8 Hz, C-6), 133.2 (C-13), 134.0 ($^3$J$^P_C$ = 3.3 Hz, C-4), 134.1 (C-14), 134.2 ($^3$J$^P_C$ = 16.1 Hz, C-3), 134.7 ($^5$J$^P_C$ = 21.5 Hz, C-2), 136.8 (C-9), 141.6 ($^1$J$^P_C$ = 138.0 Hz, C-1), 168.6 (C-15); $^{31}$P($^1$H): $\delta$ 75.0 ppm (see Scheme 3.11 for the NMR labelling system).


IR: $\nu$(P=S) = 587 (m); $\nu$(C=O) = 1624 (vs) cm$^{-1}$.

Scheme 3.11  NMR numbering scheme for 3.18.
3.4.3 X-ray crystal structure determinations of 3.13, 3.16b, 3.16c and 3.17

In all cases single crystals suitable for X-ray diffraction were grown by vapour diffusion of diethyl ether into a dichloromethane solution of the compound at room temperature.

Data collection

Unit cell and intensity data were collected at the University of Auckland on a Bruker Smart CCD Diffractometer, operating at 89 K; crystallographic details are presented in Table 3.6. Absorption corrections were applied by semi-empirical methods (SADABS(47)). The crystallographic information files for the structures can be located on the supplementary CD.

Solution and refinement

The structures 3.13 and 3.17 were solved by the direct methods option of SHELXL-97, 3.16b and 3.16c by the Patterson methods option.(48) In all cases the heavy metal was initially located and all other non-hydrogen atoms by a series of difference maps.(49) Hydrogen atoms were placed in calculated positions. In addition, 3.17 was refined as a racemic twin with occupancy 0.76/0.24.

An initial inspection of 3.17 indicated that the two independent molecules were related by an inversion point. A closer examination showed that the heavy atoms (Au, P, N, S and Cl) appeared to be related by symmetry whereas the lighter atoms where not. In order to confirm that the structure was not only one unique molecule with disordered ethyl arms the data was reprocessed in the higher symmetry space group Pnma. The data could not be solved in this space group so we are confident that Pna2₁ is the correct space group.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complex</th>
<th>3.13</th>
<th>3.16b</th>
<th>3.16c</th>
<th>3.17</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Formula</td>
<td>C_{18}H_{14}PSClHg</td>
<td>C_{18}H_{14}PSCl_{2}Au</td>
<td>C_{18}H_{14}PCl_{2}SeAu</td>
<td>C_{14}H_{32}N_{2}PSCl_{2}Au</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molecular Weight</td>
<td>529.36</td>
<td>561.19</td>
<td>608.09</td>
<td>551.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T/K</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crystal system</td>
<td>Monoclinic</td>
<td>Triclinic</td>
<td>Triclinic</td>
<td>Orthorhombic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space group</td>
<td>P2_1/c</td>
<td>P-1</td>
<td>P-1</td>
<td>Pna2_1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a (Å)</td>
<td>8.8845(1)</td>
<td>8.1875(1)</td>
<td>8.1506(1)</td>
<td>27.3998(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b (Å)</td>
<td>17.2034(1)</td>
<td>9.1443(1)</td>
<td>9.2374(1)</td>
<td>7.9520(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c (Å)</td>
<td>11.2712(2)</td>
<td>12.4011(1)</td>
<td>12.4369(2)</td>
<td>17.1925(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α (°)</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>98.705(1)</td>
<td>80.142(1)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β (°)</td>
<td>101.8490(1)</td>
<td>102.795(1)</td>
<td>76.934(1)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γ (°)</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>90.484(1)</td>
<td>89.994(1)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V (Å³)</td>
<td>1686.02(4)</td>
<td>894.124(16)</td>
<td>897.94(2)</td>
<td>3746.0(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D_{calc} (g cm⁻³)</td>
<td>2.085</td>
<td>2.084</td>
<td>2.249</td>
<td>1.955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T_{max,min}</td>
<td>0.2524, 0.1026</td>
<td>0.2742, 0.2285</td>
<td>0.4170, 0.1553</td>
<td>0.2397, 0.2038</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of unique reflections</td>
<td>3430</td>
<td>3657</td>
<td>4284</td>
<td>7379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of observed reflections [I&gt;2σ(I)]</td>
<td>3258</td>
<td>3562</td>
<td>4147</td>
<td>6979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R[I&gt;2σ(I)]</td>
<td>0.0200</td>
<td>0.0274</td>
<td>0.0152</td>
<td>0.0216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wR₂ (all data)</td>
<td>0.0525</td>
<td>0.0717</td>
<td>0.0360</td>
<td>0.0457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodness of Fit</td>
<td>1.060</td>
<td>1.106</td>
<td>1.073</td>
<td>1.130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flack x parameter</td>
<td>0.2364(4)*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Racemic twin (occupancy 0.76/0.24)
3.5 References

17. J. B. Cook; *M. Sc Thesis*, 1999, University of Waikato.


44. R. V. Parish; *Met.-Based Drugs*, 1999, 6, 271.

45. C. Gabbiani, A. Casini and L. Messori; *Gold Bull.*, 2007, 40, 73.


CHAPTER FOUR

The Cycloauration of Pyridyl Sulfonamides

4.1 Introduction

4.1.1 2-Pyridyl derived sulfonamides as bidentate ligands

Sulfonamide ligands derived from 2-pyridylamines are attractive bidentate \( N,N' \) donor ligands because of their facile synthesis and the relatively low cost of the starting materials. Synthesis can be achieved by a convenient condensation reaction between a pyridylamine (such as 2-picolyamine or 2-(2-aminoethyl)pyridine) and an organic sulfonyl chloride in the presence of a base (Scheme 4.1). This allows the introduction of different functional groups to tune both the steric and electronic properties of the ligand. Deprotonation of these ligands at the sulfonamide nitrogen can lead to a sigma bond to the metal centre, with a dative bond provided by the pyridyl nitrogen. Depending on the length of the spacer in the parent amine, cyclometallated compounds containing four-, five- or six-membered rings can potentially result.

![Scheme 4.1](image)

4.1.2 Examples of complexes of bidentate sulfonamide ligands

The first report on the coordination of pyridyl sulfonamide ligands to metal centres appeared in 1962, when Billman and Chernin discussed the use of 8-(sulfonamido)quinoline derivatives as selective metal chelating agents for \( \text{Ag}^+ \), \( \text{Cu}^{2+} \), \( \text{Zn}^{2+} \), \( \text{Pb}^{2+} \), \( \text{Co}^{2+} \) and \( \text{Hg}^{2+} \) ions. The resulting metal-ligand chelates were highly coloured solids which were insoluble in all
common organic solvents. Unfortunately they were not structurally characterised but on the basis of infra-red and elemental data the complexes were assumed to contain the deprotonated ligand coordinated to the metal ion via two nitrogen atoms.\(^{(1)}\)

More recently, the bulk of the literature explores the coordination of first row transition metal ions to these types of ligands, forming bis(sulfonamide) complexes of the type ML\(_2\). The vast majority of the research is centred around the redox chemistry of copper(II) complexes\(^{(2-6)}\) with a number of examples showing interesting biological properties.\(^{(7-11)}\) Similarly the chemistry of nickel(II)\(^{(2, 5, 12)}\) and cobalt(II)\(^{(5, 13)}\) bis(sulfonamide) complexes has been explored, and zinc(II) analogues containing fluorescent substituents on the sulfonamide ligands have been used to study intracellular zinc chemistry.\(^{(6, 15, 16)}\)

Although much more scarce, studies on the coordination of second row transition metal ions to deprotonated sulfonamide ligands have also been conducted. Ruthenium(II) complexes with \(N-(p\text{-toluenesulfonyl})\text{diamine ligands 4.1 and 4.2 were found to be catalytically active in the insertion of carbenes into alcoholic O-H bonds}\(^{(14)}\). Palladium(II)\(^{(15)}\) 4.3 and ruthenium(II)\(^{(16)}\) 4.4 complexes of the sulfonamide ligand derived from 2-(2-aminophenyl)pyridine have been synthesised and structurally characterised. Both contain puckered six-membered metallacyclic rings, and because of the bridge between the pyridyl and phenyl rings in the ligand these two moieties are not co-planar.

\subsection{4.1.3 Scope of this work}

To date, gold(III) cyclometallated complexes with pyridyl sulfonamide ligands are unknown, and as mentioned in Chapter One, cycloaurated complexes containing monoanionic bidentate ligands with donor atoms other than the \(C,N\) pair are rare. The following work details the synthesis and the resulting properties of cycloaurated compounds containing deprotonated 2-pyridyl sulfonamide ligands acting as \(N,N'\) monoanionic donor ligands to the gold(III) centre.
4.2 Results and Discussion

4.2.1 Syntheses

When the ligands 4.5 – 4.7 (Scheme 4.3) were refluxed in aqueous H[AuCl₄] in a 1:1 mole ratio, the auracyclic compounds 4.8 – 4.10 (Scheme 4.4) were easily isolated in excellent yields by filtration of the yellow to brown solid that was present throughout the reaction, the exception being 4.8c which required cooling to induce crystallisation.
This synthetic procedure is analogous to the preparation of 4.11,\(^{17, 18}\) however, similar reactions of the secondary amines 4.12a and 4.12b with [AuCl₄]⁻ only afforded the salts 4.13a and 4.13b (Scheme 4.5).\(^{19}\) The difference in the reactivity (i.e. no deprotonation of the sulfonamide ligand and the formation of a cationic cycloaurated product) can be attributed to the decreased acidity of the NH protons in the ligands 4.12a and 4.12b relative to the sulfonamide counterparts.
Scheme 4.5 Synthesis of similar cycloaurated N,N' complexes which have been reported in the literature.

NMR and IR spectroscopy, along with ESI mass spectrometry indicate the nitrogen donor ligands in 4.8 – 4.10 are coordinated to gold through a neutral pyridyl donor and an anionic amido group (see below). The formulation was confirmed by X-ray crystal structures of the complexes 4.8c and 4.10.

Attempted preparation of the analogous four-membered auuracyclic system 4.15 from 4.14 proved unsuccessful. When 4.14 was refluxed with H[AuCl₄] in either an aqueous or an acetonitrile/water (1:1) solution, or alternatively when 4.14 was added to an aqueous acetonitrile solution of H[AuCl₄] at room temperature, the only product was the salt 4.16. This was identified by NMR spectroscopy and the presence of both the [4.14+H]+ and [AuCl₄]⁻ ions in positive and negative ESI mass spectra respectively.

Scheme 4.6 The sulfonamide ligand derived from 2-aminopyridine and the possible products formed when reacted with H[AuCl₄].
4.2.2 X-ray crystal structures of 4.8c and 4.10 · CH₂Cl₂

Single crystal X-ray structure analyses of 4.8c and 4.10 were carried out in order to confirm the bonding of the ligand to the gold. In both cases, the ligands are deprotonated at the sulfonamide nitrogen and bonded to the gold through the two nitrogen atoms, with the remaining sites on the metal occupied by two cis chloride ligands. Complex 4.8c crystallises with two independent molecules per asymmetric unit and 4.10 as a CH₂Cl₂ solvate. Diagrams of the crystal structures of 4.8c and 4.10 · CH₂Cl₂, along with the atom numbering schemes, are shown in Figures 4.1 and 4.2 respectively. Selected bond lengths and angles are presented in Tables 4.1 and 4.2. A full list of structural parameters, atomic coordinates and anisotropic displacement parameters can be found on the supplementary CD.

Figure 4.1 Molecular structure of 4.8c, showing one of the unique molecules in the asymmetric unit, and the atom numbering scheme. Thermal ellipsoids are shown at the 50% probability level.
For both 4.8c and 4.10 · CH₂Cl₂, the geometry around the $d^8$ gold centre is essentially square planar, with the bite angle of the sulfonamide ligand less than 90° in both cases (Table 4.2). In 4.8c, the atom with the greatest deviation from the metallic coordination plane [defined by Au(1), N(1), N(2), Cl(1) and Cl(2)] is N(1) (0.0817(15) Å) and Au(1) (0.0280(10) Å) for molecules 1 and 2 respectively. For 4.10 · CH₂Cl₂, the gold atom shows the greatest deviation from the coordination plane [defined by Au(1), N(1), N(2), Cl(1) and Cl(2)], sitting 0.0514(8) Å above the plane.

Table 4.1 A comparison of selected bond lengths (Å) for the crystal structures of 4.8c (two independent molecules) and 4.10 · CH₂Cl₂ (esds in parentheses).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>4.8c Molecule 1</th>
<th>4.8c Molecule 2</th>
<th>4.10 · CH₂Cl₂</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>2.2872(10)</td>
<td>2.2807(10)</td>
<td>2.2789(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>2.2720(10)</td>
<td>2.2800(10)</td>
<td>2.2637(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – N(ex py)</td>
<td>2.046(3)</td>
<td>2.037(3)</td>
<td>2.026(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – N(ex NH)</td>
<td>2.006(3)</td>
<td>2.021(3)</td>
<td>2.038(3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4.2  A comparison of selected bond angles (°) for the crystal structures of 4.8c (including the two independent molecules) and 4.10 · CH2Cl2 (esds in parentheses).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Molecule 1</th>
<th>Molecule 2</th>
<th>4.10 · CH2Cl2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cl(1) – Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>89.09(4)</td>
<td>90.17(4)</td>
<td>88.13(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl(1) – Au(1) – N(ex py)</td>
<td>94.08(10)</td>
<td>93.89(10)</td>
<td>94.36(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N(ex py) – Au(1) – N(ex NH)</td>
<td>78.98(13)</td>
<td>82.09(13)</td>
<td>81.48(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N(ex NH) – Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>98.02(10)</td>
<td>93.79(10)</td>
<td>95.88(8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In all cases, the coordination around the deprotonated sulfonamide nitrogen N(2) is not planar, but is slightly distorted towards tetrahedral geometry, with the angles around the nitrogen adding to 358.6° (molecule 1) and 344.2° (molecule 2) for 4.8c, and 353.7° for 4.10 · CH2Cl2. Similar cyclometallated gold(III) and platinum(II) compounds have also shown this behaviour.

In both molecules of 4.8c, the cycloaurated ring [defined by Au(1), C(1), C(5), N(1) and N(2)] is in a envelope conformation with N(2) sitting above the ring (by 0.2858(22) Å and 0.2060(22) Å for molecules 1 and 2 respectively). Due to the increased rigidity imposed by the aromatic ring system, in 4.10 · CH2Cl2 it is Au(1) that shows the greatest deviation from the plane [defined by C(1)-C(9), N(1) and N(2)], sitting 0.3388(25) Å below the plane of the quinoline ring system (Figure 4.3).

In 4.8c the gold – sulfonamide nitrogen bond length is shorter than the gold – pyridyl nitrogen bond length, but the opposite is observed in the structure of 4.10 · CH2Cl2. The rigidity imposed on the system by the quinoline moiety in 4.10 · CH2Cl2, in comparison to the flexibility of 4.8c system, is the probable cause of this discrepancy.
4.2.3 NMR and IR spectroscopic characterisation

The compounds 4.8 – 4.10 were most suited to analysis by NMR spectroscopy. The effect of coordination of the gold to the ligand through the deprotonated sulfonamide nitrogen and pyridyl nitrogen could clearly be seen. The methylene protons of the ligands 4.5a-c appear as a doublet due to coupling to the NH proton of the sulfonamide group, whereas for 4.6a and 4.6b a triplet and a quartet arise from the two methylene groups. Upon coordination to the gold, the methylene signals become either a singlet (five-membered ring systems) or two
triplets (six-membered ring systems) which provides unambiguous evidence for loss of the sulfonamide proton.

Coordination to the gold can clearly be seen in compounds 4.8a (Figure 4.4) and 4.8b. A downfield shift of approximately 0.7 ppm is seen for H-1 (the proton adjacent to the coordinated pyridyl nitrogen) upon coordination to the gold, most probably due to the proximity of the gold atom and the increased deshielding produced by the electronegative metal centre. Lesser shifts are seen for the remaining three complexes. This could be explained by the spectra of the ligands being acquired in a different solvent to the complexes (for solubility reasons).

![NMR spectra](image.png)

**Figure 4.4** $^1$H NMR spectra (CDCl$_3$) of (a) 4.5a and (b) 4.8a, showing changes in the spectra upon coordination of the ligand to gold.

For the complexes 4.9a and 4.9b there appears to be fluxionality in the six-membered auracyclic rings at 30 °C. There is the possibility that this may be due to inversion of the amide nitrogen which is distorted from planarity, however this seems unlikely. The two
methylene signals are seen as broad triplets – presumably if the ring was not fluxional the multiplets would be much more complex due to the different stereochemical environment each proton inhabits.

Upon coordination of the ligand to the gold centre, the main points of interest in the IR spectra are the loss of NH stretching frequencies (~3100 cm$^{-1}$) and a shift to lower wavenumbers for the SO$_2$ stretching modes, consistent with lengthening of the S=O bonds through movement of electrons onto the sulfonyl oxygen atoms. For example, the SO$_2$ stretches shift from 1164 cm$^{-1}$ and 1327 cm$^{-1}$ (for the asymmetric and symmetric stretches respectively) in 4.5a to 1146 cm$^{-1}$ and 1306 cm$^{-1}$ in the cycloaurated complex 4.5b.

### 4.2.4 ESI mass spectrometric characterisation

Analysis of the compounds 4.8 – 4.10 by ESI-MS was not overly effective. Because the compounds are neutral they must form a complex with an ion (e.g. H$^+$ or Na$^+$) to be observed in the mass spectra, alternatively the displacement of a chloride ligand by a neutral species (e.g. pyridine) also produces a cation. The low ionisation ability of the neutral species, means that cationic impurity ions (namely the bis(cycloaurated) species [(L)$_2$Au]$^+$ where L is the deprotonated ligand, also see Figure 4.5) dominate the spectra as a result of their high ionisation efficiency. This phenomenon has been observed previously in cyclometallated gold(III) dichloride species.

For example, when 4.8b (=M) is analysed without ionisation aids (Figure 4.5a), the spectrum is dominated by the ion at m/z 691 ([(L)$_2$Au]$^+$), although there is no evidence for the presence of this species in either the $^1$H NMR spectrum or microanalytical results. Addition of NaCl to the sample before analysis (Figure 4.5b) produces ions at m/z 537 (21%) and 1051 (10%) corresponding to [M+Na]$^+$ and [2M+Na]$^+$ respectively, however the species ([(L)$_2$Au]$^+$) is still the dominant peak. Addition of pyridine (py), a strongly coordinating species, to a solution of the compound in methanol (Figure 4.5c) forms species identified as [M-Cl+py]$^+$ and [M-2Cl+py+OMe]$^+$ at m/z 558 and 554 respectively, however the ion at m/z 691 (40%) is still present. Identification and confirmation of these ions is aided by the presence of chlorine(s)
and thus unique isotope patterns. A similar pattern of behaviour was seen for all members of this family of compounds.

![Figure 4.5 Positive ion ESI mass spectra (cone voltage 20 V, MeOH solvent) of 4.8b (=M) showing the observed ions under different ionisation conditions: (a) neat solution; (b) with addition of NaCl; (c) with addition of pyridine (py).]

### 4.2.5 Biological activity

Previously $C,N$ cycloaurated complexes, in particular the compound (damp)AuCl$_2$, (damp = 2-[(dimethylamino)methyl]phenyl) and its derivatives have shown promising anti-tumour activity.$^{(24)}$ Little data exist on $N,N'$ stabilised cycloaurated complexes and for this reason complexes 4.8a-c – 4.8a-b were evaluated for anti-tumour activity against the P388 murine leukemia cell line. Samples were analysed as 1:1 dichloromethane/methanol solutions; the method of analysis is described in Appendix 1. Results indicate an IC$_{50}$ value of greater than 12500 ng mL$^{-1}$ for all compounds, indicating little activity against this particular cell line.
4.2.6 Reactivity

As discussed previously in Chapter 1, the reaction of \(C,N\) cycloaurated dichloride species with tertiary phosphines may result in displacement of the chloride ligands by coordination of the neutral phosphines to the gold or conversely, cleavage of the Au–N bond may occur with both Au–Cl bonds remaining intact – in both cases gold(III) products are formed. Such reactions can give an indication of the strength of the gold-nitrogen bond and are dependent on the cycloaurated ligand present.\(^{(25)}\)

Reaction of the auracyclic species \(4.8a\) with PPh\(_3\) in a 1:1 molar ratio in dichloromethane resulted in the yellow solution becoming lighter. ESI-MS of the solution showed ions corresponding to the gold(I) species \([\text{Au(PPh}_3)_2]^+\) (\(m/z\) 721), PPh\(_3\) and Ph\(_3\)P=O. \(^{31}\)P NMR spectroscopy of the solution gave peaks at \(\delta\) 30 (br s) and 34 (s) ppm, the first of which arises from Ph\(_3\)P=O, the second an average of rapidly exchanging \([\text{Au(PPh}_3)_2]^+\) with free PPh\(_3\).\(^{(26)}\) Likewise, when \(4.8a\) was reacted with PPh\(_3\) in a 1:2 molar ratio, ESI-MS gave ions due to \([\text{Au(PPh}_3)_2]^+,\) PPh\(_3\) and Ph\(_3\)P=O; the \(^{31}\)P NMR spectrum again showed peaks at \(\delta\) 30 (s) and 34 (s) ppm. Reaction of \(4.8a\) with thiosalicylic acid using previously established methods for \(C,N\) cycloaurated complexes\(^{(27)}\) resulted in immediate reduction and decomposition of the gold species to elemental gold. These results indicate that the \(N,N'\) cycloaurated ligands do not stabilise the Au(III) centre as effectively as \(C,N\) cycloaurated species, and reaction with phosphines gives reduction of the gold(III).

4.3 Conclusions

Six new cycloaurated gold(III) complexes containing \(N,N'\) cyclometallated ligands have been synthesised and fully characterised, including the X-ray crystal structures of two of these complexes. Coordination to the gold is through a pyridyl and deprotonated amide nitrogen atom. Compared with the more common analogous \(C,N\) cyclometallated compounds, these complexes do not appear to show as much stability, as reactions with reducing agents leads to reduction of Au(III) to Au(I) and elemental gold. The biological activity of these complexes against murine leukaemia cell lines is also low – possibly due to this lack of stability towards reduction. These results indicate that the anionic nitrogen is not as efficient at stabilising the
electron deficient gold(III) centre as the carbon. This is possibly because of the difference in the electronegativity of carbon (2.55) and nitrogen (3.04).

4.4 Experimental

4.4.1 General

2-Picolylamine, 2-(2-aminoethyl)pyridine and 8-(tosylamino)quinoline (Aldrich) were used as supplied, as were p-toluenesulfonylchloride (BDH), benzenesulfonylchloride (BDH) and methanesulfonylchloride (Riedel-de Haën). The sulfonamide ligands (all previously reported compounds)\(^\text{3, 28, 29}\) were synthesised by the condensation of the sulfonyl chloride with the amine, following the procedure reported for \(4.5a\) and \(4.6a^{(30)}\). Details of the general characterisation conditions can be found in Appendix 1. For the ESI-MS assignment \(M=\text{LAuCl}_2\), where \(L\) is the deprotonated sulfonamide ligand.

4.4.2 Syntheses

Synthesis of \(4.8a\)

\(4.5a\) (0.560 g, 2.13 mmol) and \(\text{H[AuCl}_4\cdot 4\text{H}_2\text{O}}\) (0.877 g, 2.13 mmol) were added to water (75 mL) to give an orange suspension. This was refluxed with stirring for 3 hours and then cooled to room temperature. The orange precipitate that was present throughout the reaction was filtered and washed with water (2 \(\times\) 10 mL) and isopropanol (2 \(\times\) 10 mL) and air dried to give 0.918 g (82\%) of \(4.8a\) as an orange solid.

Found: C 29.6, H 2.5, N 5.3; \(\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{13}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2\text{SCl}_2\text{Au}\) requires C 29.5, H 2.5, N 5.3%.

NMR (CDCl\(_3\)): \(^1\text{H}\): \(\delta\) 2.40 (s, 3H, H-11), 4.88 (s, 2H, H-6), 7.26 (d, \(^3\text{J}_{9,8} = 8.5\) Hz, 2H, H-9), 7.62 (ddd, \(^3\text{J}_{2,1} = 6.1\) Hz, \(^3\text{J}_{2,3} = 7.7\) Hz, \(^4\text{J}_{2,4} = 1.6\) Hz, 1H, H-2), 7.73 (dd, \(^3\text{J}_{4,3} = 7.8\) Hz, \(^4\text{J}_{4,2} = 1.6\) Hz, 1H, H-4), 7.87 (d, \(^3\text{J}_{8,9} = 8.5\) Hz, 2H, H-8), 8.13 (td, \(^3\text{J}_{3,2} = 7.7\) Hz, \(^3\text{J}_{3,4} = 7.8\) Hz, \(^4\text{J}_{3,1} = 1.5\) Hz, 1H, H-3), 9.22 (dd, \(^3\text{J}_{1,2} = 6.1\) Hz, \(^4\text{J}_{1,3} = 1.5\) Hz, 1H, H-1); \(^{13}\text{C}\{^1\text{H}\}:\ \delta\ 21.7\)
(C-11), 61.6 (C-6), 121.7 (C-4), 125.5 (C-2), 127.8 (C-8), 129.7 (C-9), 138.0 (C-7), 143.2 (C-3), 143.6 (C-10), 147.5 (C-1), 166.9 (C-5) ppm (see Scheme 4.7 for the NMR numbering scheme).

ESI-MS: NaCl added: \( m/z \): 551 (32%, \([M+Na]^+\)), 719 (100%, \([\text{L}_2\text{Au}]^+\)), 1079 (10%, \([2M+Na]^+\)); pyridine added: \( m/z \): 568 (28%, \([M-2\text{Cl+py+OMe}]^+\)), 572 (100%, \([M-\text{Cl+py}]^+\)), 719 (25%, \([\text{L}_2\text{Au}]^+\)).

IR: \( \nu(\text{SO}_2 \text{ sym}) \) 1306 (s), \( \nu(\text{SO}_2 \text{ asym}) \) = 1146 (vs) cm\(^{-1}\).

**Synthesis of 4.8b**

As for the synthesis of 4.8a, the ligand 4.5b (0.566 g, 2.28 mmol) was suspended in an aqueous (50 mL) solution of H[AuCl\(_4\)].4H\(_2\)O (0.939 g, 2.28 mmol) and refluxed with stirring for 3 hours. The precipitate that was present throughout was filtered and washed with water (2 \( \times \) 10 mL) and isopropanol (2 \( \times \) 10 mL). The yellow/brown solid was air dried to give 0.964 g (82%) of 4.8b.

Found: C 27.9, H 2.1, N 5.4; \( \text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{11}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2\text{SCl}_2\text{Au} \) requires C 28.0, H 2.2, N 5.4%.

NMR (CDCl\(_3\)): \(^1\)H: \( \delta \) 4.91 (s, 2H, H-6), 7.47 (t, \(^3J_{9,10} = 8.0 \text{ Hz}, \(^3J_{9,8} = 7.2 \text{ Hz}, 2\text{H, H-9}), 7.53 \) (t, \(^3J_{10,9} = 8.0 \text{ Hz}, 1\text{H, H-10}), 7.63 (dd, \(^3J_{2,1} = 6.1 \text{ Hz}, \(^3J_{2,3} = 7.6 \text{ Hz}, \(^4J_{2,4} = 1.6 \text{ Hz}, 2\text{H, H-2), 7.74 \) (dd, \(^3J_{4,3} = 7.8 \text{ Hz}, \(^4J_{4,2} = 1.6 \text{ Hz}, 1\text{H, H-4), 7.99 \) (d, \(^3J_{8,9} = 7.2 \text{ Hz, 2H, H-8}, 8.13 \) (td, \(^3J_{3,2} = 7.6 \text{ Hz}, \(^3J_{3,4} = 7.8 \text{ Hz}, \(^4J_{3,1} = 1.5 \text{ Hz, 1H, H-3), 9.22 \) (dd, \(^3J_{1,2} = 6.1 \text{ Hz}, \(^4J_{1,3} = 1.5 \text{ Hz, 1H, H-1});\(^\text{13}C\{^1\text{H}\}: \delta 61.6 (\text{C-6}, 121.7 (\text{C-4), 125.5 (C-2), 127.7 (C-8), 129.0 (C-9), 141.2 \) (C-7), 143.2 (C-3), 132.7 (C-10), 147.5 (C-1), 166.7 (C-5) ppm (see Scheme 4.7 for the NMR numbering scheme).

ESI-MS: NaCl added: \( m/z \): 537 (21%, \([M+Na]^+\)), 691 (100 %, \([\text{L}_2\text{Au}]^+\)), 1051 (10% \([2M+Na]^+\); pyridine added: \( m/z \): 554 (40%, \([M-2\text{Cl+py+OMe}]^+\)), 558 (100% \([M-\text{Cl+py}]^+\)), 691 (40%, \([\text{L}_2\text{Au}]^+\)).
IR: $\nu$(SO$_2$ sym) = 1313 (s), $\nu$(SO$_2$ asym) = 1155 (vs) cm$^{-1}$.

**Synthesis of 4.8c**

4.5c (0.200 g, 1.07 mmol) was dissolved in a solution of H[AuCl$_4$].4H$_2$O (0.441 g, 1.07 mmol) in water (30 mL). Upon reaching reflux temperature, the yellow solution turned deep orange and remained this colour for the duration of the reflux (2 hours). The clear solution was cooled in an ice bath which resulted in the deposition of orange/red microcrystals. These were filtered and washed with water (2 $\times$ 10 mL) and isopropanol (2 $\times$ 10 mL) and air dried to give 0.266 g (55%) of 4.8c.

Found: C 18.1, H 1.9, N 6.0; C$_7$H$_9$N$_2$O$_2$SCl$_2$Au requires C 18.6, H 2.0, N 6.2%.

NMR (d$_6$-DMSO): $^1$H: $\delta$ 3.10 (s, 3H, H-7), 4.96 (s, 2H, H-6), 7.80 (dd, $^3$$J_{2,1}$ = 6.2 Hz, $^3$$J_{2,3}$ = 7.6 Hz, $^4$$J_{2,4}$ = 1.2 Hz, 1H, H-2), 8.05 (dd, $^3$$J_{4,3}$ = 7.7 Hz, $^4$$J_{4,2}$ = 1.2 Hz, 1H, H-4), 8.33 (td, $^3$$J_{3,2}$ = 7.6 Hz, $^3$$J_{3,4}$ = 7.7 Hz, $^4$$J_{3,1}$ = 1.4 Hz, 1H, H-3), 9.04 (dd, $^3$$J_{1,2}$ = 6.2 Hz, $^4$$J_{1,3}$ = 1.4 Hz, 1H, H-1); $^{13}$C{$_1$H}: $\delta$ 41.9 (C-7), 61.1 (C-6), 122.1 (C-4), 125.6 (C-2), 143.8 (C-3), 146.5 (C-1), 166.2 (C-5) ppm (see Scheme 4.7 for the NMR numbering scheme).


IR: $\nu$(SO$_2$ sym) = 1306 (s), $\nu$(SO$_2$ asym) = 1132 (vs) cm$^{-1}$.

![Scheme 4.7](image-url)  
**Scheme 4.7** NMR numbering scheme for 4.8a-c. For complex 4.8c the methyl carbon is labelled C-7.
Synthesis of 4.9a

To an aqueous (30 mL) solution of H[AuCl₄].4H₂O (0.531 g, 1.29 mmol), 4.6a (0.357 g, 1.29 mmol) was added and the yellow solution refluxed with stirring for 3.5 hours. During this time a brown solid formed, which after cooling was filtered, dried and washed with water (2 × 10 mL) and ether (1 × 10 mL) to give 0.542 g (78%) of 4.9a.

Found: C 31.1, H 2.9, N 5.3; C₁₄H₁₅N₂O₂SCl₂Au requires C 31.0, H 2.8, N 5.2%.

NMR (d₆-DMSO): ¹H: δ 2.31 (s, 3H, H-12), 3.23 (br t, 2H, H-7), 3.47 (t, 3J₆₋₇ = 6.3 Hz, 2H, H-6), 7.19 (d, 3J₁₀₋₁₀ = 8.2 Hz, 2H, H-10), 7.57 (d, 3J₉₋₁₀ = 8.2 Hz, 2H, H-9), 7.74 (ddd, 3J₂₋₁ = 6.0 Hz, 3J₂₋₃ = 7.7 Hz, 4J₂₋₄ = 1.5 Hz, 1H, H-2), 7.77 (dd, 3J₄₋₃ = 7.8 Hz, 4J₄₋₂ = 1.5 Hz, 1H, H-4), 8.26 (td, 1H, 3J₃₋₂ = 7.7 Hz, 3J₃₋₄ = 7.8 Hz, 4J₃₋₁ = 1.4 Hz, 1H, H-3), 8.91 (dd, 3J₁₋₂ = 6.0 Hz, 4J₁₋₃ = 1.4 Hz, 1H, H-1); ¹³C {¹H}: δ 20.8 (C-12), 37.6 (C-6), 42.4 (C-7), 126.0 (C-2), 126.8 (C-9), 127.7 (C-4), 129.4 (C-10), 137.8 (C-8), 142.2 (C-11), 143.8 (C-3), 149.7 (C-1), 155.5 (C-5) ppm (see Scheme 4.8 for the NMR numbering scheme).


IR: ν(SO₂ sym) = 1311 (s), ν(SO₂ asym) = 1148 (vs) cm⁻¹.

Synthesis of 4.9b

4.6b (0.329 g, 1.25 mmol) and aqueous (30 mL) H[AuCl₄].4H₂O (0.515 g, 1.25 mmol) were refluxed with stirring for 3 hours, resulting in the formation of a red/orange precipitate. This was filtered, washed with water (2 × 10 mL) and isopropanol (1 × 10 mL). The crude product was recrystallised by dissolving in minimal dichloromethane, filtering off the insoluble yellow precipitate, and adding diethyl ether to the filtrate until the solution went cloudy. The resulting dark red crystals were filtered and washed with diethyl ether (2 × 10 mL) and dried to give 0.436 g (66%) of 4.9b.
Found: C 29.7, H 2.6, N 5.4; \text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{13}\text{N}_{2}\text{O}_{2}\text{SCl}_2\text{Au} \text{requires C 29.5, H 2.5, N 5.3\%}.

NMR (d$_6$-DMSO): $^1$H: $\delta$ 3.25 (br t, 2H, H-7), 3.48 (t, $^3J_{6,7} = 6.4$ Hz, 2H, H-6), 7.41 (t, $^3J_{9,10} = 3.0$ Hz, 2H, H-9), 7.48 (t, $^3J_{11,10} = 7.5$ Hz, 1H, H-11), 7.70 (d, $^3J_{0,10} = 7.0$ Hz, 2H, H-10), 7.75 (ddd, $^3J_{2,1} = 6.0$ Hz, $^3J_{2,3} = 7.8$ Hz, $^4J_{2,4} = 1.7$ Hz, 1H, H-2), 7.77 (dd, $^3J_{4,3} = 7.7$ Hz, $^4J_{4,2} = 1.7$ Hz, 1H, H-4), 8.25 (td, $^3J_{3,2} = 7.8$ Hz, $^3J_{5,4} = 7.7$ Hz, $^4J_{3,1} = 1.4$ Hz, 1H, H-3), 8.95 (dd, $^3J_{1,2} = 6.0$ Hz, $^4J_{1,3} = 1.4$ Hz, 1H, H-1); $^{13}$C{$^1$H}: $\delta$ 37.6 (C-6), 42.4 (C-7), 126.0 (C-2), 126.7 (C-9), 127.7 (C-4), 128.9 (C-10), 131.9 (C-11), 140.6 (C-8), 143.9 (C-3), 149.7 (C-1), 155.5 (C-5) ppm (see Scheme 4.8 for the NMR numbering scheme).

ESI-MS: NaCl added: 547 (55\%, [M-Cl+OMe+Na$^+$]), 551 (100\%, [M+Na$^+$]), 1079 (25\%, [2M+Na$^+$]); pyridine added: 568 (100\%, [M-2Cl+py+OMe$^+$]), 572 (78\%, [M-Cl+py$^+$]).

IR: v(SO$_2$ sym) = 1320 (s), v(SO$_2$ asym) = 1149 (vs) cm$^{-1}$.

\begin{center}
\textbf{Scheme 4.8} NMR numbering scheme for 4.9a and 4.9b.
\end{center}

\textbf{Synthesis of 4.10}

8-(p-Tosylamino)quinoline 4.7 (0.176 g, 0.590 mmol) was suspended in aqueous (30 mL) H[AuCl$_4$].4H$_2$O (0.243 g, 0.590 mmol) and refluxed with stirring for 8 hours. When the mixture reached reflux temperature, a brown solid formed that remained present throughout the duration of the reaction. The mixture was allowed to cool before being filtered, washed with H$_2$O (2 $\times$ 10 mL) and isopropanol (2 $\times$ 10 mL) and dried under vacuum, to give 4.10 as a brown solid (0.241 g, 72\%).

Found: C 33.9, H 2.3, N 5.0; \text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{13}\text{N}_{2}\text{O}_{2}\text{SCl}_2\text{Au} \text{requires C 34.0, H 2.3, N 5.0\%}.
NMR (d$_6$-DMSO): $^1$H: $\delta$ 2.30 (s, 3H, H-14), 7.26 (d, $^3J_{1,11} = 8.3$ Hz, 2H, H-12), 7.67 (d, $^3J_{11,12} = 8.3$ Hz 2H, H-11), 7.76 (t, $^3J_{6,7,8} = 7.7$ Hz 1H, H-6), 7.81 (dd, $^3J_{7,6} = 7.7$ Hz, $^4J_{7,5} = 1.6$ Hz, 1H, H-7), 7.86 (dd, $^3J_{5,6} = 7.7$ Hz, $^4J_{5,7} = 1.6$ Hz, 1H, H-5), 7.93 (dd, $^3J_{2,1} = 5.6$ Hz, $^3J_{2,3} = 8.3$ Hz, 1H, H-2), 8.92 (dd, $^3J_{5,2} = 8.3$ Hz, $^4J_{5,1} = 1.1$ Hz, 1H, H-3), 9.21 (dd, $^3J_{1,2} = 5.6$ Hz, $^4J_{1,3} = 1.1$ Hz, 1H, H-1); $^{13}$C{1H}: $\delta$ 21.1 (C-14), 123.5 (C-2), 124.3 (C-5), 125.9 (C-7), 126.8 (C-11), 129.7 (C-12), 130.0 (C-6), 130.7 (C-4), 138.8 (C-10), 143.3 (C-13), 143.7 (C-9), 144.0 (C-3), 146.0 (C-8), 148.1 (C-1) ppm (see Scheme 4.9 for the NMR numbering scheme).


IR: $\nu$(SO$_2$ sym) = 1326 (s), $\nu$(SO$_2$ asym) = 1158 (vs) cm$^{-1}$.

![Scheme 4.9](image.png)

**Scheme 4.9** NMR numbering scheme for 4.10.

**Attempted preparation of 4.15**

(i) Reflux with H[AuCl$_4$] in water. 4.14 (0.310 g, 1.25 mmol) was refluxed with stirring in aqueous (30 mL) H[AuCl$_4$].4H$_2$O (0.515 g, 1.25 mmol) for 1 hour, after which a brown solid had formed. When cool, the solution was filtered and the solid washed with water (2 × 10 mL) and isopropanol (1 × 10 mL) to give 0.188 g (26%) of a brown solid, which was identified as the salt 4.16.

NMR (CDCl$_3$): $^1$H $\delta$ 2.38 (s, 3H, H-10), 6.80 (ddd, $^3J_{2,1} = 5.9$ Hz, $^3J_{2,3} = 7.1$ Hz, $^4J_{2,4} = 1.1$Hz, 1H, H-2), 7.24 (d, $^3J_{8,7} = 8.1$ Hz, 2H, H-8), 7.40 (dd, $^3J_{4,3} = 8.9$ Hz, $^4J_{4,2} = 1.1$ Hz, 1H,
H-4), 7.64 (ddd, $^2J_{3,4} = 8.9$ Hz, $^4J_{3,1} = 1.9$ Hz, 1H, H-3), 7.79 (d, $^3J_{7,8} = 8.1$ Hz, 2H, H-7), 8.34 (dd, $^3J_{1,2} = 5.9$ Hz, $^4J_{1,3} = 1.9$ Hz, 1H, H-1), NH not observed; $^{13}$C{${^1}$H} $\delta$ 21.6 (C-10), 114.7 (C-2), 115.1 (C-4), 127.0 (C-7), 129.7 (C-8), 138.8 (C-6), 141.5 (C-1), 141.9 (C-3), 143.1 (C-9), 155.0 (C-5) ppm (see Scheme 4.10 for the NMR numbering scheme).


(ii) Standing with H[AuCl$_4$] in MeCN/H$_2$O solution. 4.14 (0.108 g, 0.43 mmol) was dissolved in MeCN (5 mL) and added dropwise to aqueous (20 mL) H[AuCl$_4$].4H$_2$O (0.177 g, 0.43 mmol). The solution was left to stand and after 2 weeks a light brown solid had formed. This was filtered and washed with water (2 $\times$ 10 mL) and ether (1 $\times$ 10 mL), to give 0.078 g (31%) of 4.16, which was identified by ESI-MS and $^1$H NMR spectroscopy.

(iii) Refluxing in MeCN/H$_2$O. 4.14 (0.050 g, 0.20 mmol) and H[AuCl$_4$].4H$_2$O (0.082 g, 0.20 mmol) were refluxed in aqueous (20 mL) MeCN (1:1) with stirring for 3 hours. The solution was left to stand overnight and brown crystals were formed. These were subsequently identified as 4.16 (0.037g, 31%).

![Scheme 4.10](image)  
**Scheme 4.10** NMR numbering scheme for 4.16.

### 4.4.3 X-ray crystal structure determinations of 4.8c and 4.10 · CH$_2$Cl$_2$

Single crystals of 4.8c and 4.10 · CH$_2$Cl$_2$ suitable for X-ray structure analysis were obtained by slow diffusion of diethyl ether into a dichloromethane solution of the compound, at room temperature and -20 °C respectively. Complex 4.8c crystallised as orange prisms with two independent molecules per asymmetric unit and 4.10 · CH$_2$Cl$_2$ as brown blocks as a dichloromethane solvate.
Table 4.3  Crystal and refinement data for the complexes 4.8c and 4.10 · CH₂Cl₂.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complex</th>
<th>4.8c</th>
<th>4.10 · CH₂Cl₂</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Formula</td>
<td>C₇H₉AuCl₂N₂O₂S</td>
<td>C₁₆H₁₃AuCl₂N₂O₂S · CH₂Cl₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molecular Weight</td>
<td>453.09</td>
<td>650.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T/K</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crystal system</td>
<td>Triclinic</td>
<td>Monoclinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space group</td>
<td>P-1</td>
<td>P2₁/n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a (Å)</td>
<td>7.3424(1)</td>
<td>14.1782(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b (Å)</td>
<td>9.281(1)</td>
<td>10.6792(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c (Å)</td>
<td>17.2700(2)</td>
<td>14.4771(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α (°)</td>
<td>99.383(1)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β (°)</td>
<td>95.785(1)</td>
<td>115.147(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γ (°)</td>
<td>102.127(1)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V (Å³)</td>
<td>1124.06(2)</td>
<td>1984.2(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dcalc (g cm⁻³)</td>
<td>2.677</td>
<td>2.176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tmax,min</td>
<td>0.1699, 0.1138</td>
<td>0.2950, 0.0597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of unique reflections</td>
<td>4562</td>
<td>6252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of observed reflections [I&gt;2σ(I)]</td>
<td>4360</td>
<td>5476</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R[I&gt;2σ(I)]</td>
<td>0.0203</td>
<td>0.0293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wR² (all data)</td>
<td>0.0512</td>
<td>0.0868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodness of Fit</td>
<td>1.117</td>
<td>1.046</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Data Collection

Intensity data and unit cell dimensions were obtained at the University of Auckland on a Bruker Smart CCD Diffractometer (4.8c) and at the University of Canterbury on a Bruker Apex II Diffractometer (4.10 · CH₂Cl₂). The data were corrected for absorption using SADABS. Crystal and refinement data for the complexes are presented in Table 4.3. The crystallographic information files for the complexes are included on the supplementary CD.

Solution and refinement

The structures of 4.8c and 4.10 · CH₂Cl₂ were solved using the Patterson and Direct methods options of SHELXS-97 respectively. The gold atom was initially located, followed by the
location of all other non-hydrogen atoms by a series of difference maps. Full-matrix least-squares refinement (SHELXL-97)\(^{33}\) was based upon \(F_0^2\) with all non-hydrogen atoms anisotropic, and hydrogen atoms in calculated positions.

### 4.5 References


32. G. M. Sheldrick, SHELXS-97 - A Program for the Solution of Crystal Structures, University of Göttingen, Germany, **1997**.

33. G. M. Sheldrick, SHELXL-97 - A Program for the Refinement of Crystal Structures, University of Göttingen, Germany, **1997**.
CHAPTER FIVE

The Cycloauration of Pyridine-2-Thiocarboxamide Ligands

5.1 Introduction

5.1.1 N-Substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamides as bidentate ligands

N-Substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamides are interesting bidentate ligands as they have the potential to coordinate to metal centres in a number of different ways, as depicted in Scheme 5.1. Firstly, deprotonation of the ligand may occur prior to coordination and because thioamides have two tautomeric forms they may act as either a monoanionic \( N, N' \) (coordination of thioketo tautomer 5.1) or \( S, N \) (coordination of the thiol form 5.2) bidentate ligand. Alternatively, the neutral ligand may coordinate to the metal centre via the pyridyl nitrogen and sulfur atoms 5.3. In these cases, five-membered chelates result. However, coordination via the amide nitrogen and the sulfur (either as the neutral ligand 5.4 or after deprotonation 5.5) would give four-membered metallacycles. In the case of the deprotonated ligand both tautomeric forms will again be present, only the thioketo isomer 5.5 is shown in Scheme 5.1.

Although there are a number of synthetic routes to \( N \)-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamides, the most attractive preparative method involves the reaction of an amine with sulfur in refluxing 2-methylpyridine in the presence of a catalytic amount (2 mol %) of sodium sulfide nonahydrate (a modified Willgerodt-Kindler reaction).\(^{(1)}\) Yields of the thioamides are excellent (>70 %) and there is the opportunity to tune the steric and electronic properties of the products easily by varying the amines used.
Scheme 5.1 Possible bidentate coordination modes of N-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamide ligands.

5.1.2 Coordination complexes of N-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamides with heavy transition metals

The literature contains a vast number of examples of N-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamide coordination compounds, mostly containing copper(II) metal centres. Therefore this introduction will only briefly cover the coordination compounds that contain either palladium, platinum or gold $d^8$ metal centres. Unfortunately, most examples appear in the non-English literature (i.e. either Russian or German language publications) so a full review could not be carried out.

Palladium(II) complexes of N-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamides have been reported for the three coordination modes that are described in Scheme 5.1 \((5.6a, b, 5.7a, 5.8, \text{Scheme } 5.2)^{(2-4)}\). Examples of platinum(II) complexes also exist, with the ligand coordinated via either the $S, N$ \((5.6c)^{(2)}\) or $N, N'$ \((5.7b)^{(4)}\) binding modes. One example \(5.9\) of an $S, N$ coordinated
A gold(III) complex is reported, synthesised by the extraction of gold(III) from an HCl solution by the ligand.\(^{(2)}\) Although structural characterisation by X-ray crystallography was not reported for any of the above complexes, the coordination mode of the ligand was assigned using IR, UV-Vis and NMR spectroscopy. There is however, an example of a gold(I) complex where the structure has been elucidated by X-ray crystallography \(5.10\). Not surprisingly, the thiol tautomer is deprotonated and the ligand is coordinated to the gold through the sulfur atom, with a weak interaction between the gold and the pyridyl nitrogen.\(^{(5)}\)

To the best of our knowledge, there are no examples of palladium, platinum and gold four-membered ring systems formed from \(N\)-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamide ligands,
however the Polish literature cites several examples of four-membered cationic auracycles formed from the coordination of neutral thiocarboxamides ligands (5.11a-c, Scheme 5.2). Again the binding mode was proposed on the basis of elemental analysis and spectroscopy\(^{(6)}\) Scheme 5.2 depicts the complexes described above.

5.1.3 Scope of this work
Although there are precedents in the literature for a cycloaurated \(N\)-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamide ligand, structures have not been fully characterised. We wished to investigate the synthesis of these compounds \textit{via} direct reaction with gold sources and subsequently fully characterise the compounds and assess their properties. Therefore, this Chapter describes the synthesis and characterisation of \(N\)-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamide complexes.

5.2 Results and Discussion

5.2.1 Reaction of \(N\)-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamide ligands 5.12a-d with H[\(\text{AuCl}_4\)]
Reaction of the \(N\)-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamide ligands 5.12a-d with one molar equivalent of H[\(\text{AuCl}_4\)] in water gave the cycloaurated compounds 5.13a-d in moderate to good yields. The reactivity of the ligands towards H[\(\text{AuCl}_4\)] was dependent on the \(N\)-substituent. For the methyl derivative (5.12a), the reaction took place rapidly (15 minutes) at room temperature. However, when the \(N\)-substituent was more electron withdrawing (\textit{e.g.} 5.12c and 5.12d) the reaction needed more forcing conditions and the solution had to be refluxed before any reaction was observed. The intermediate benzyl substituted ligand 5.12b required stirring at room temperature for five hours and any heating of this solution to reflux resulted in the reduction of the gold (observed as a gold mirror on the flask). In addition, when two equivalents of 5.12a were reacted with H[\(\text{AuCl}_4\)] and \(\text{NH}_4\)PF\(_6\) the complex 5.14 was formed in moderate yields.
The gold complexes 5.13a-c were poorly soluble in MeOH, CH$_2$Cl$_2$, CHCl$_3$ and acetone. They were however soluble in DMSO but decomposition occurred after approximately six hours in solution. Complex 5.13d, which contains a methoxy substituted phenyl ring was much more soluble in CH$_2$Cl$_2$, CHCl$_3$ and acetone. The complexes were characterised by NMR spectroscopy and microanalytical data. In addition an X-ray crystal structure of 5.13b was obtained.

An X-ray crystal structure determination of 5.13b confirms that the thiol tautomer has been deprotonated which allows for the ligand to coordinate to the gold via the anionic sulfur and the neutral pyridyl nitrogen. The remaining two coordination sites on the square planar gold are occupied by cis chloride ligands. The compound has crystallised with two independent molecules in the asymmetric unit, which differ mainly in the conformation of the benzyl groups. The molecular structure and atom labelling scheme of one molecule is shown in Figure 5.1 and selected bond parameters are presented in Table 5.1. A full list of structural parameters, atomic coordinates and anisotropic displacement parameters can be found on the supplementary CD.

Excluding the benzyl moiety, the core of the molecule is essentially planar. In molecule 1 the benzyl ring is tilted from the main plane of the molecule at an angle of 18.88(8)$^\circ$, however in molecule 2 the benzyl ring is twisted out of the plane of the molecule by 58.80(4)$^\circ$. The two
molecules in the asymmetric unit pack together in such a way that there are two intermolecular Au-S interactions, with distances of 3.498 Å and 3.556 Å (Figure 5.2). However, this packing is only between the two molecules in the asymmetric unit and these dimers do not extend into chains that run throughout the structure. Presumably the planar nature of the two molecules allows such interactions in the solid state.

**Figure 5.1** Molecular diagram of 5.13b showing one of the unique molecules present in the asymmetric unit, and the atom numbering scheme. Thermal ellipsoids are shown at the 50% probability level.
The C(6)-S(1) bond lengths of 1.772(3) Å (molecule 1) and 1.767(3) Å (molecule 2) in the gold complexes are longer than the C=S bond length (ca. 1.64 Å) in previously characterised N-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamide ligands.\(^7\,^8\) This is not surprising as the free ligands contain a formal C=S bond, in the gold complexes the bond order is reduced as it is the thiol tautomer that is coordinated. In addition, the C(6)-N(2) bond lengths in the cycloaurated complexes are 1.273(3) Å (molecule 1) 1.278(3) Å (molecule 2) and are shorter than in the free ligands (where they are ca. 1.33 Å).

The bite angles of the ligands in the complexes are 86.42(6)° and 86.71(6)° for molecule 1 and 2 respectively, and are comparable to deprotonated thioamides coordinated to square-planar Cu(II) or Ni(II) centres through a sulfur and pyridyl nitrogen.\(^9\,^10\) As a result, the S(1)-C(6)-C(5) angles in the complexes are more acute than in the free ligands where they are ca. 121°. A gold(I) complex has been formed from the N-(2-methoxyphenyl)pyridine-2-thiocarboxamide ligand (5.10, Scheme 5.2). The sulfur is acting as an anionic donor, with enough of an interaction between the nitrogen of the 2-pyridyl group and the gold to hold the ligand in a pseudo-cyclic structure. However, the bite angle of the ligand is much less (78.82°).\(^5\)
Table 5.1  Selected structural parameters for 5.13b (both molecules), with esds in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond lengths (Å)</th>
<th>Molecule 1</th>
<th>Molecule 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(1)</td>
<td>2.2709(6)</td>
<td>2.2746(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – Cl(2)</td>
<td>2.3289(6)</td>
<td>2.3353(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – S(1)</td>
<td>2.2747(6)</td>
<td>2.2723(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>2.051(2)</td>
<td>2.050(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N(1) – C(5)</td>
<td>1.359(3)</td>
<td>1.365(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(5) – C(6)</td>
<td>1.479(3)</td>
<td>1.479(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(6) – S(1)</td>
<td>1.772(3)</td>
<td>1.767(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(6) – N(2)</td>
<td>1.273(3)</td>
<td>1.278(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N(2) – C(7)</td>
<td>1.454(3)</td>
<td>1.459(3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond angles (°)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cl(1) – Au – Cl(2)</td>
<td>90.58(2)</td>
<td>91.35(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl(2) – Au – N(1)</td>
<td>95.29(6)</td>
<td>95.45(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl(1) – Au – S(1)</td>
<td>87.70(2)</td>
<td>86.48(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S(1) – Au – N(1)</td>
<td>86.42(6)</td>
<td>86.71(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au – N(1) – C(5)</td>
<td>118.95(16)</td>
<td>118.58(16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N(1) – C(5) – C(6)</td>
<td>118.1(2)</td>
<td>118.0(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(5) – C(6) – S(1)</td>
<td>117.69(18)</td>
<td>117.98(18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(6) – S(1) – Au</td>
<td>98.77(8)</td>
<td>98.59(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(6) – N(2) – C(7)</td>
<td>118.6(2)</td>
<td>117.6(2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2.3  Spectroscopic characterisation of complexes 5.13a – 5.13d

Cycloauration of the ligands results in three main changes to the NMR spectra. Firstly, coordination of the electron-withdrawing gold atom to the pyridyl nitrogen causes a significant downfield shift of approximately 1.4 ppm for the proton adjacent to the nitrogen (H-1, Figure 5.3) when the spectra are acquired in CDCl₃ (in d₆-DMSO there is only 1 ppm difference). The amide proton (N-H) is lost upon coordination and is therefore not observed in the spectra of the cyclometallated complexes. Because of this, in 5.13a and 5.13b the H-7 protons change
from a doublet in the ligand to a singlet in the metallacycle as they are no longer coupled to the NH proton (e.g. H-7 in Figure 5.3). The most obvious change in the $^{13}$C{$_{1}$H} spectra is the signal assigned to the thio ketone carbon (C-6), which moves upfield by approximately 30 ppm (~190 ppm in the ligand to ~160 ppm in the metallacycle) upon coordination to the gold. This observation is in accordance with the suggestion that upon coordination of the sulfur to the gold the bond order of the C=S bond is reduced.

![Figure 5.3](image_url)  
**Figure 5.3** $^{1}$H NMR spectra (CDCl$_3$) of (a) 5.12a and (b) 5.13a, showing the changes in the spectra upon coordination of the ligand to gold. The insets show the expanded aromatic regions (ligand assignment from reference 1).

Characterisation of cycloaurated complexes by infrared spectroscopy is of little use. Other than the loss of the N-H stretch that is present in the ligand the main diagnostic band in the cycloaurated complexes would be in the C-S stretching region. However, the C-S stretch occurs in the region of 600-700 cm$^{-1}$ and is weak and difficult to assign due to the multitude of other vibrations that occur in this region (e.g. aromatic C-H bending vibrations).$^{(11)}$ Therefore, this raises queries as to the mode of bonding in the previous cyclometallated $N$-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamide complexes (mentioned in Section 5.1.2) that were assigned on the basis of IR spectroscopy.
5.2.4 Mass spectrometric characterisation of complexes 5.13a – 5.13d

Because of the lack of ionisable groups on the cycloaurated complexes they were not overly visible in ESI mass spectrometry experiments. Although small peaks are seen that arise from [M+Na]^+ cations, the main peak in the spectra were from the cationic species [(L)_2Au]^+, analogous to 5.14, which was presumably only present in trace amounts as neither NMR or microanalysis found any evidence of it. We have previously seen this type of ion before as the most abundant in poorly ionising Au(III) dichloride complexes and found that addition of pyridine to the sample immediately before analysis results in substitution of a chloride ligand giving a cationic species which is easily visible.\(^{(12)}\) However when this method was applied to the cycloaurated complexes 5.13a - 5.13d the number of peaks present in the spectra (none of which were easily identifiable) increased substantially – it appears in this case the addition of pyridine causes rapid decomposition of the metallacycle.

5.2.5 Reaction of N-(2-pyridyl)pyridine-2-thiocarboxamide (5.15) with H[AuCl_4]

The ligand 5.15 was investigated as there was the possibility of forming either a five- or six-membered cyclometallated ring with the thioamide acting as a S,N donor ligand. In addition, deprotonation of the ligand may give a N,N’ coordinated five-membered auracycle, as shown in Scheme 5.4. However, when 5.15 was reacted with one equivalent of H[AuCl_4] the result was not as expected. Instead of cycloauration, the ligand was oxidised by the gold followed by internal cyclisation to form a 1,2,4-thiadiazolo[2,3-a]pyridinium heterocyclic ring system, with an [AuCl_4]^− counter ion 5.16. The structure was elucidated by an X-ray crystallographic study, with the molecular structure shown in Figure 5.4. Selected bond lengths and angles can be found in Table 5.2, full structural parameters along with atomic coordinates and anisotropic displacement factors can be found on the supplementary CD.
Scheme 5.4 Possible reactions products of the ligand 5.15 with H[AuCl₄], including the salt obtained by oxidation and ring closure of the ligand 5.16.

X-ray quality crystals of 5.16 were grown by diffusion of methanol into a DMSO solution of the crude sample. However, microanalysis of the crystals was inconsistent with this formulation and the crystal chosen for the diffraction study may not have been representative of the entire sample. Indeed, the crude yield is also inconsistent with the formulation 5.16 and it is likely that [AuCl₂]⁻ and Cl⁻ anions are also present in the sample. Because both [AuCl₂]⁻ and Cl⁻ are inherently present in the ESI mass spectrum of [AuCl₄]⁻ it is difficult to confirm this assumption.

Few X-ray structural studies have been carried out on 1,2,4-thiadiazolo[2,3-a]pyridine ring systems. Compound 5.17 and the copper complex 5.18 (Scheme 5.5) represent the closest examples of structurally characterised compounds. As with the neutral species 5.17¹³ and 5.18¹⁴,¹⁵ the cationic moiety of 5.16 is essentially planar. The C(6)–N(2) bond is 1.293(13) Å, very close to what is expected for a C=N bond. The bonds C(5)–C(6), C(7)–N(2) and C(6)–S(1) all have distances which fall between the values expected for either a double or a single bond suggesting some conjugation is present in the system. The [AuCl₄]⁻ anion has a regular square planar geometry as expected.
Figure 5.4 Molecular diagram of 5.16 showing the atom labelling scheme. Thermal ellipsoids are shown at the 50% probability level.

Table 5.2 Selected structural parameters for 5.16 (esds in parentheses)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Lengths (Å)</th>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Angles (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N(3) – C(7)</td>
<td>1.378(12)</td>
<td>C(4) – C(5) – C(6)</td>
<td>123.0(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(7) – N(2)</td>
<td>1.376(12)</td>
<td>N(1) – C(5) – C(6)</td>
<td>113.0(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N(2) – C(6)</td>
<td>1.293(13)</td>
<td>C(5) – C(6) – S(1)</td>
<td>115.5(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(6) – S(1)</td>
<td>1.727(10)</td>
<td>C(5) – C(6) – N(2)</td>
<td>127.4(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S(1) – N(3)</td>
<td>1.704(8)</td>
<td>N(2) – C(6) – S(1)</td>
<td>117.1(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(5) – C(6)</td>
<td>1.462(14)</td>
<td>C(6) – S(1) – N(3)</td>
<td>87.2(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>S(1) – N(3) – C(7)</td>
<td>112.3(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N(3) – C(7) – N(2)</td>
<td>113.3(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C(7) – N(2) – C(6)</td>
<td>110.1(8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NMR spectroscopy and ESI mass spectrometry are consistent with the X-ray structural analysis. The proton adjacent to the pyridinium nitrogen (H-11) is further downfield (~0.7 ppm) than the equivalent proton in the free ligand, however a greater shift (~1 ppm) would be expected if a cycloaurated complex had formed. In addition, the carbon arising from the thioketone group (C-6) has shifted upfield from 188.2 ppm in the ligand to 181.9 ppm in the cation. In the cycloaurated complexes, the shift has been much more significant (~30 ppm) and is further evidence for some conjugation in the system. The ESI mass spectrum shows a single peak at \( m/z \) 214.043 which corresponds to the pyridinium cation.

In hindsight it is not surprising that oxidation and cyclisation of 5.15 has occurred. Both chemical and electrochemical oxidation of \( N \)-(2-pyridyl)thiocarboxamides has previously been used in the synthesis of 1,2,4-thiadiazolo[2,3-\( a \)]pyridinium species. For example, Tabaković et al. have shown that oxidation of 5.19 at a graphite anode gives the cation 5.20, with the process being reversible either by reduction at a platinum cathode or by reaction with ascorbic acid (Scheme 5.6).\(^{(16)}\) Other reagents such as nitrosobenzene,\(^{(17)}\) sulfuryl chloride\(^{(18)}\) and Cu(III) ions\(^{(19)}\) have also been shown to oxidise species containing the 2-pyridylthioamide moiety to heterocyclic species.

![Scheme 5.6](image_url)

**Scheme 5.6** Electrochemical synthesis 1,2,4-thiadiazolo[2,3-\( a \)]pyridinium species that was demonstrated by Tabaković et al.
5.3 Conclusions

Five new cyclometallated gold(III) complexes containing mono-anionic N-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamide donor ligands have been synthesised and fully characterised, including the X-ray crystal structure of one of the complexes. This unambiguously shows that the thiol tautomer (i.e. the deprotonated sulfur) has coordinated to the metal centre via the sulfur and nitrogen atoms. Unlike the more common cycloaurated complexes that contain mono-anionic C,N donor ligands these compounds show poor stability and decompose over a short period of time (approximately six hours in solution). This is not surprising; in the cycloaurated thiocarboxamide complexes described above there is an easily oxidised sulfur centre neighbouring a highly reducible gold(III) centre. Therefore, although the synthesis of these cycloaurated complexes is facile, they appear to have limited applications because of the inherent instability they possess. Interestingly, the 2-pyridyl substituted ligand does not undergo analogous cyclometallation. Instead, the ligand is oxidised and an internal cyclisation occurs to give a 1,2,4-thiadiazolo[2,3-a]pyridinium heterocyclic ring.

5.4 Experimental

5.4.1 General

The N-substituted pyridine-2-thiocarboxamides used in this study were prepared by literature the methods\(^{(1)}\), with their purity assessed by \(^1\)H NMR spectroscopy. Ligands 5.12a, 5.12b and 5.12c were synthesised by Mr. Scott Carter. \(\text{H[AuCl}_4]\) was prepared by the method described in Appendix 1.

5.4.2 Syntheses

Synthesis of 5.13a

5.12a (0.200 g, 1.30 mol) and \(\text{H[AuCl}_4]cdot4\text{H}_2\text{O}\) (0.536 g, 1.30 mol) were stirred in water (20 mL) for 20 minutes during which time a brown solid formed. The solution was filtered and
the brown solid washed with water (2 × 10 mL) and isopropanol (1 × 10 mL) and air dried to give 0.413 g (76%) of **5.13a** as a brown solid.

Found: C 20.4, H 1.9, N 6.4; C_{7}H_{7}N_{2}SCl_{2}Au requires C 20.1, H 1.7, N 6.7%.

NMR (CDCl_{3}): \( ^{1}H \; \delta \; 3.50 \) (s, 3H, H-7), 7.75 (ddd, \( ^{3}J_{2,1} = 6.1 \) Hz, \( ^{3}J_{2,3} = 7.0 \) Hz, \( ^{4}J_{2,4} = 2.1 \) Hz, 1H, H-2), 8.19 (ddd, \( ^{3}J_{3,2} = 7.0 \) Hz, \( ^{3}J_{3,4} = 8.1 \) Hz, \( ^{4}J_{3,1} = 1.4 \) Hz, 1H, H-3), 8.23 (dd, \( ^{3}J_{4,3} = 8.1 \) Hz, \( ^{4}J_{4,2} = 2.1 \) Hz, 1H, H-4), 9.93 (dd, \( ^{3}J_{1,2} = 6.1 \) Hz, \( ^{4}J_{1,3} = 1.4 \) Hz, 1H, H-1); \( ^{13}C \; \delta \; 40.8 \) (C-7), 127.0 (C-3), 128.5 (C-2), 142.3 (C-4), 148.3 (C-1), 158.6 (C-5), 162.3 (C-6) ppm (see Scheme 5.7 for the NMR numbering scheme).

ESI-MS: \( m/z \): 499.034 (100%, [(L)_{2}Au]^{+}, calc 499.032), 440.930 (78%, [M+Na]^{+}, calc 440.927), 418.947 (65%, [M+H]^{+}, calc 418.945).

![Scheme 5.7](image)

**Scheme 5.7** NMR numbering scheme for **5.13a**.

**Synthesis of 5.13b**

**5.12b** (0.100 g, 0.44 mmol) and H[AuCl_{4}].4H_{2}O (0.180 g, 0.44 mmol) were stirred in water (10 mL) for 5.5 hours during which time a pale yellow solid formed. The solution was filtered and the light yellow solid washed with water (2 × 10 mL) and isopropanol (1 × 10 mL) and air dried to give 0.107 g (49%) of **5.13b** as a pale yellow solid.

Found: C 31.8, H 2.3, N 5.5; C_{13}H_{11}N_{2}SCl_{2}Au requires C 31.5, H 2.2, N 5.7%.

NMR (\( d_{6}-\text{DMSO} \)): \( ^{1}H \; \delta \; 4.79 \) (s, 2H, H-7), 7.31 (d, \( ^{3}J_{11,10} = 7.4 \) Hz, 1H, H-11), 7.38 (t, \( ^{3}J_{10,9/11} = 7.4 \) Hz, 2H, H-10), 7.47 (d, \( ^{3}J_{9,10} = 7.4 \) Hz, 2H, H-9), 8.02 (ddd, \( ^{3}J_{2,1} = 6.0 \) Hz, \( ^{3}J_{2,3} = 7.7 \) Hz, \( ^{4}J_{2,4} = 1.7 \) Hz, 1H, H-2), 8.23 (dd, \( ^{3}J_{4,3} = 8.0 \) Hz, \( ^{4}J_{4,2} = 1.7 \) Hz, 1H, H-4), 8.41 (ddd, \( ^{3}J_{3,2} = 7.7 \) Hz, 

---

161
Hz, $^3J_{3,4} = 8.0$ Hz, $^4J_{3,1} = 1.4$ Hz, 1H, H-3), 9.66 (dd, $^3J_{1,2} = 6.0$ Hz, $^4J_{1,3} = 1.4$ Hz, 1H, H-1); $^{13}$C{$_1^H$} δ 55.8 (C-7), 126.6 (C-4), 127.0 (C-11), 127.8 (C-9), 128.4(C-10), 129.6 (C-2), 138.6 (C-8), 143.5 (C-3), 148.2 (C-1), 157.1 (C-5), 161.5 (C-6) ppm (See Scheme 5.8 for the NMR numbering scheme).

ESI-MS: m/z: 651.099 (100%, [(L)$_2$Au]$^+$, calc 651.095), 516.962 (5%, [M+Na]$^+$, calc 516.958).

![Scheme 5.8](image.png) NMR numbering scheme for 5.13b.

Synthesis of 5.13c

5.12c (0.200 g, 0.88 mmol) and H[AuCl$_4$].4H$_2$O (0.362 g, 0.88 mmol) were refluxed in water (20 mL) for 1 hour during which time a dark brown solid formed. The solution was filtered and the dark brown solid was washed with water (2 × 10 mL) and isopropanol (1 × 10 mL) and air dried to give 0.385 g (88%) of 5.13c as a dark brown solid.

Found: C 31.9, H 2.2, N 5.6; C$_{13}$H$_{11}$N$_2$SCl$_2$Au requires C 31.5, H 2.2, N 5.7%.

NMR ($d_6$-DMSO): $^1$H δ 2.34 (s, 3H, H-11), 7.00 (d, $^3J_{8,9} = 8.4$ Hz, 2H, H-8), 7.29 (d, $^3J_{9,8} = 8.4$ Hz, 2H, H-9), 8.08 (ddd, $^3J_{2,1} = 6.0$ Hz, $^3J_{2,3} = 7.6$ Hz, $^4J_{2,4} = 1.4$ Hz, 1H, H-2), 8.34 (ddd, $^3J_{4,3} = 7.9$ Hz, $^4J_{4,2} = 1.4$ Hz, 1H, H-4), 8.48 (dd, $^3J_{3,2} = 7.6$ Hz, $^3J_{3,4} = 7.9$ Hz, $^4J_{3,1} = 1.1$ Hz, 1H, H-3), 9.69 (dd, $^3J_{1,2} = 6.0$ Hz, $^4J_{1,3} = 1.1$ Hz, 1H, H-1); $^{13}$C{$_1^H$} δ 20.6 (C-11), 120.3 (C-8), 126.7 (C-4), 129.8 (C-9), 130.0 (C-2), 135.6 (C-10), 143.6 (C-3), 144.6 (C-7), 148.5 (C-1), 157.2 (C-5), 161.9 (C-6) ppm (see Scheme 5.9 for the NMR numbering scheme).
ESI-MS: m/z 516.957 (100%, [M+Na]^+, calc 516.958), 651.095 (49%, [(L)_2Au]^+, calc 651.095), 494.971 (14%, [M+H]^+, calc 494.976).

Scheme 5.9 NMR numbering scheme for 5.13c.

Synthesis of 5.13d

5.12d (0.100 g, 0.41 mmol) and H[AuCl_4].4H_2O (0.169 g, 0.41 mmol) were refluxed in water (15 mL) for 1 hour during which time a dark coloured solid formed. The solution was cooled and filtered and the solid washed with water (2 × 10 mL) and isopropanol (1 × 10 mL). Air drying gave 0.107 g (51%) of 5.13d as a dark brown solid.

Found: C 29.8, H 2.2, N 5.1; C_{13}H_{11}N_{2}O_{2}Cl_{2}Au requires C 30.6, H 2.2, N 5.5%.

NMR (CDCl_3): δ 3.85 (s, 3H, H-11), 6.97 (d, J_{9,8} = 9.0 Hz, 2H, H-9), 7.22 (d, J_{8,9} = 9.0 Hz, 2H, H-8), 7.77 (ddd, J_{2,1} = 6.0 Hz, J_{2,3} = 7.6 Hz, J_{2,4} = 1.6 Hz, 1H, H-2), 8.23 (ddd, J_{3,2} = 7.6 Hz, J_{3,4} = 8.1 Hz, J_{3,1} = 1.3 Hz, 1H, H-3), 8.43 (dd, J_{4,3} = 8.1 Hz, J_{4,2} = 1.6 Hz, 1H, H-4), 9.96 (dd, J_{1,2} = 6.0 Hz, J_{1,3} = 1.3 Hz, 1H, H-1); ^{13}C\{^1H\} δ 55.7 (C-11), 114.6 (C-9), 124.1 (C-8), 127.4 (C-4), 128.5 (C-2), 140.4 (C-7), 142.1 (C-3), 148.6 (C-1), 158.4 (C-6), 158.9 (C-10), 159.8 (C-5) ppm (see Scheme 5.10 for the NMR numbering scheme).

ESI-MS: m/z 683.088 (100%, [(L)_2Au]^+, calc 683.084), 532.957 (10%, [M+Na]^+, calc 532.953).
**Scheme 5.10** NMR numbering scheme for 5.13d.

**Synthesis of 5.14**

5.12a (0.050 g, 0.33 mmol), H[AuCl₄]·4H₂O (0.066 g, 0.16 mmol) and NH₄PF₆ (0.054 g, 0.33 mmol) were stirred in water (10 mL) for 20 minutes. The pale brown solid that formed during this time was filtered off and washed with water (2 × 10 mL) and isopropanol (10 mL) to give 0.081 g (79%) of 5.14.

Found: C 25.5, H 2.2, N 8.3; C₁₄H₁₄N₄F₆PS₂Au requires C 26.1, H 2.2, N 8.7%.

NMR (d₆-DMSO): ¹H δ 3.56 (s, 3H, H-7), 8.07 (ddd, ³J₂,₁ = 5.6 Hz, ³J₂,₃ = 7.6 Hz, ⁴J₂,₄ = 1.4 Hz, 1H, H-2), 8.28 (dd, ³J₄,₃ = 7.9 Hz, ⁴J₄,₂ = 1.4 Hz, 1H, H-4), 8.49 (ddd, ³J₃,₂ = 7.6 Hz, ³J₃,₄ = 7.9 Hz, ⁴J₃,₁ = 1.0 Hz, 1H, H-3), 8.89 (d, ³J₁,₂ = 5.6 Hz, 1H, H-1); ¹³C{¹H} δ 41.2 (C-7), 125.5 (C-4), 129.9 (C-2), 143.5 (C-3), 148.1 (C-1), 154.4 (C-5), 160.7 (C-6) ppm (see Scheme 5.11 for the NMR numbering scheme).

ESI-MS: m/z 499.033 (100%, [(L)₂Au]⁺, calc 499.032).

**Scheme 5.11** NMR numbering scheme for 5.14.
Reaction of 5.15 with H[AuCl₄]

5.15 (0.100 g, 0.46 mmol) was stirred in aqueous (15 mL) H[AuCl₄].4H₂O (0.190 g, 0.46 mmol) for 1 hour. The solution was filtered leaving a brown/orange solid that was washed with water (2 × 10 mL) and isopropanol (1 × 10 mL) and dried to give 0.144 g of 5.16.

Found:  C 26.8, H 1.8, N 6.9;  C₁₁H₈N₃SCl₄Au requires C 23.9, H 1.5, N 7.6% (see section 5.2.5 for discussion).

NMR (d₆-DMSO): ¹H: δ 7.90 (dd, ³J₂,₁ = 4.6 Hz, ³J₂,₃ = 7.6 Hz, 1H, H-2), 8.04 (dd, ³J₁₀,₁₁ = 6.6 Hz, ³J₁₀,₉ = 7.4 Hz, 1H, H-10), 8.28 (dd, ³J₃,₂ = 7.6 Hz, ³J₃,₄ = 7.7 Hz, 1H, H-3), 8.42 (d, ³J₄,₃ = 7.7 Hz, 1H, H-4), 8.60 (dd, ³J₉,₁₀ = 7.4 Hz, ³J₉,₈ = 8.5 Hz, 1H, H-9), 8.73 (d, ³J₈,₉ = 8.5 Hz, 1H, H-8), 8.88 (d, ³J₁,₂ = 4.6 Hz, 1H, H-1), 9.75 (d, ³J₁₁,₁₀ = 6.6 Hz, 1H, H-11); ¹³C{¹H} δ 121.6 (C-4), 122.8 (C-10), 123.2 (C-8), 130.2 (C-2), 138.6 (C-11), 139.6 (C-3), 142.9 (C-9), 146.2 (C-5), 151.0 (C-1), 161.2 (C-7), 181.9 (C-6) ppm (see Scheme 5.12 for the NMR numbering scheme).

ESI-MS: m/z 214.043 (100%, [5.15-H]⁺, calc 214.043).

Scheme 5.12  NMR numbering scheme for 5.16.

5.4.3  X-ray crystal structure determinations of 5.13b and 5.16

Crystals of 5.13b were grown by slow diffusion of diethyl ether into a dichloromethane solution of the compound and 5.16 was crystallised by slow diffusion of methanol into a solution of the compound in DMSO, both at room temperature.
Data collection

Unit cell dimensions and reflection data for 5.13b was collected at the University of Auckland on a Bruker Smart CCD Diffractometer and for 5.16 at the University of Canterbury on a Bruker Apex II Diffractometer. Semi-empirical absorption corrections were applied by SADABS. Crystal and refinement data for the two complexes are presented in Table 5.3.

Table 5.3  Unit cell and crystallographic refinement data for the complexes 5.13b and 5.16.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complex</th>
<th>5.13b</th>
<th>5.16</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Formula</td>
<td>C\textsubscript{13}H\textsubscript{11}AuCl\textsubscript{2}N\textsubscript{2}S</td>
<td>C\textsubscript{11}H\textsubscript{8}AuCl\textsubscript{4}N\textsubscript{3}S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molecular Weight</td>
<td>495.16</td>
<td>553.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T/K</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crystal system</td>
<td>Triclinic</td>
<td>Monoclinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space group</td>
<td>P-1</td>
<td>P\textsubscript{2}1/c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a (Å)</td>
<td>7.6029(1)</td>
<td>7.8738(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b (Å)</td>
<td>13.6803(2)</td>
<td>28.0459(14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c (Å)</td>
<td>13.7727(2)</td>
<td>7.2397(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α (°)</td>
<td>90.542(1)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β (°)</td>
<td>103.635(1)</td>
<td>108.677(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γ (°)</td>
<td>91.901(1)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V (Å\textsuperscript{3})</td>
<td>1391.14(3)</td>
<td>1514.54(14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D\textsubscript{calc} (g cm\textsuperscript{-3})</td>
<td>2.364</td>
<td>2.425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T\textsubscript{max,min}</td>
<td>0.5557, 0.1356</td>
<td>0.1239, 0.0460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of unique reflections</td>
<td>6673</td>
<td>2679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of observed reflections [I&gt;2σ(I)]</td>
<td>5957</td>
<td>2594</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R[I&gt;2σ(I)]</td>
<td>0.0156</td>
<td>0.0369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wR\textsubscript{2} (all data)</td>
<td>0.0361</td>
<td>0.0910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodness of Fit</td>
<td>1.039</td>
<td>1.082</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Solution and refinement
Both structures were solved by Patterson methods of SHELXS-97.\(^{(21)}\) The gold atoms were initially located, and all other non-hydrogen atoms were found by a series of difference maps (SHELXL-97\(^{(22)}\)) and refined anisotropically. Hydrogen atoms were placed in calculated positions. Because of the pseudo symmetry present in the free pyridyl ring of 5.16 an inspection of temperature factors was used to assign N(1) and C(4). The pyridyl ring is orientated so that N(1) and S(1) are cis to each other. In addition, inversion of C(4) and N(1) (so that N(1) and N(2) are cis to each other) resulted in increases in both \( R_1 \) and \( wR_2 \). After a final refinement cycle of 5.16 there was still a significant amount of residual electron density present. Refinement excluding the high angle data (above 50°) reduced, but did not totally eliminate, this problem. A peak (2.05 e Å\(^{-3}\)) remained approximately 1.6 Å from S(1) and this was assigned as an artefact as it could not be modelled in any way that made chemical sense.

5.5 References

22. G. M. Sheldrick, *SHELXL-97 - A Program for the Refinement of Crystal Structures*, University of Göttingen, Germany, **1997**.
CHAPTER SIX

Gold(III) Complexes formed with Kläui Ligands

6.1 Introduction

6.1.1 Synthesis and properties of the Kläui ligand

The Kläui ligands have the general formula \([\{(C_5R_5)Co\{P(O)R’R”\}_3\}]^-
(Scheme 6.1) and were first synthesised in 1977. These ligands are examples of monoanionic tridentate six-electron ligands able to coordinate to metal centres through three oxygen donor atoms.\(^{(1)}\) The following is only a brief introduction to the Kläui ligand, however two comprehensive reviews are available which cover the chemistry in detail.\(^{(2, 3)}\)

![Scheme 6.1 Schematic of a general Kläui ligand, L⁻.](image)

The synthesis of Kläui ligands can be carried out in a one-pot reaction, depicted in Scheme 6.2. When cobaltocene is heated (without solvent) to approximately 100 °C with diesters of phosphorous acid ((RO)\(_2\)P(O)H) or secondary phosphane oxides (HP(O)R\(_2\)) the complex containing two Kläui ligands (L\(_2\)Co) is obtained. The free anionic ligand L⁻ can be acquired by the cleavage of L\(_2\)Co with cyanide in the presence of atmospheric oxygen. Using this strategy, ligands with R = alkyl, aryl or O-alkyl substituents can be synthesised. In addition, the analogous rhodium\(^{(4)}\) and iridium based ligands\(^{(5)}\) have also been synthesised.
Scheme 6.2 Synthesis of Kläui ligands from cobaltocene.

Even though the ligands are examples of ‘half-sandwich’ complexes they are extremely robust and can be dissolved in aqueous sulfuric acid without decomposition. In addition they are inert to oxidation by atmospheric oxygen and they show interesting solubility. For example, the sodium salts are readily soluble in both water and pentane.\(^{(2)}\)

The Kläui ligands fall between \(\text{F}^-\) and DMSO in the spectrochemical series making them weak oxygen ligands; in the nephelauxetic series the ligands fall between water and DMSO making them hard ligands. Therefore, the electronic properties of the ligands are approximately equal to that of fluoride or oxide anions. Kläui has stated that these observations may be because the presence of the \(\text{CpCo}\) means there is no opportunity for delocalisation of the \(\text{d}\) electrons of the coordinated metal ions through the \(\text{P}=\text{O}\) bridges.\(^{(2)}\)

### 6.1.2 Scope of this work

In a 1990 review on the chemistry of these ligands it was pointed out that Kläui complexes can be formed with almost every metal ion and a selection of non-metals (boron) as well.\(^{(2)}\) As the Kläui ligands favour octahedral coordination it is not surprising that gold complexes are missing. Complexes with the square planar platinum(II) centres are known - in these examples the Kläui ligand is only coordinated \textit{via} two oxygen atoms.\(^{(6, 7)}\) This laboratory has
previously been interested in the coordination of Kläui ligands to metal centres\(^{(8,9)}\) therefore it was decided to investigate complexes with gold(III).

### 6.2 Results and Discussion

#### 6.2.1 Syntheses

When cycloaurated 2-benzylpyridine gold(III) dichloride 6.1 was reacted with the Kläui ligands 6.2 (a \(\text{R} = \text{OMe},\) b \(\text{R} = \text{OEt}\)) in dichloromethane in the presence of \(\text{Tl}[\text{BF}_4]\) for 24 hours, the complexes 6.3a and 6.3b were isolated as yellow \([\text{BF}_4]\) salts in adequate yields (Scheme 6.3). Varying the reaction times (to either six or 48 hours) did not improve the yields and there was evidence for the decomposition of the gold(III) starting material to elemental gold. A similar reaction with a cycloaurated iminophosphorane 6.4 gave the analogous complexes 6.5a and 6.5b, again in adequate yields (Scheme 6.3).

![Scheme 6.3 Synthesis of Au(III) Kläui complexes 6.3 and 6.5 (a \(\text{R} = \text{OMe};\) b \(\text{R} = \text{OEt}\)).](image-url)
The resulting complexes were analysed by ESI mass spectrometry and variable temperature NMR analysis. Satisfactory microelemental data could be obtained for three of the complexes. Unfortunately, after several attempts, satisfactory data could not be obtained for 6.5a. Even after successive recrystallisations the $^1$H NMR spectrum showed traces of an impurity that could not be removed. In addition, an X-ray crystal structure of 6.5b was determined.

### 6.2.2 X-ray crystal structure of 6.5b

An X-ray crystal structure of 6.5b was carried out to in order to characterise the bonding of Kläui compound to the gold(III) complex. The structure shows that the complex is bound to the gold centre through two oxygen atoms with the third ‘dangling’ above the gold coordination plane. Figure 6.1 shows the molecular structure and Table 6.1 gives important bond lengths and angles. Full structural parameters can be found on the supplementary CD.

![Molecular diagram of the cationic moiety of 6.5b. For clarity, the hydrogen atoms, [BF$_4$]$^-$ anion and the ethyl arms of the Kläui ligand have been excluded. Thermal ellipsoids are shown at the 50% probability level.](image)

---

172
Table 6.1  Selected bond lengths (Å) and angles (°) for the complex 6.5b.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Lengths (Å)</th>
<th>Atoms</th>
<th>Angles (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – O(11)</td>
<td>2.722(2)</td>
<td>O(31) – Au(1) – O(21)</td>
<td>91.82(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – O(21)</td>
<td>2.023(2)</td>
<td>O(31) – Au(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>90.54(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – O(31)</td>
<td>2.083(2)</td>
<td>N(1) – Au(1) – C(41)</td>
<td>85.55(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O(11) – P(1)</td>
<td>1.487(2)</td>
<td>C(41) – Au(1) – O(21)</td>
<td>92.08(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O(21) – P(2)</td>
<td>1.537(2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O(31) – P(3)</td>
<td>1.522(2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – C(41)</td>
<td>1.995(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au(1) – N(1)</td>
<td>2.008(2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P(4) – N(1)</td>
<td>1.636(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This geometrical arrangement differs from what is seen in the palladium(II) Kläui complex 6.6. In this case the two non-coordinating P=O oxygen atoms are twisted away from the palladium centre (Figure 6.2).\(^6\) In the palladium(II) π-allyl Kläui complex 6.7 the non-coordinating oxygen sits over the palladium centre, and forms a hydrogen bond with a water molecule.\(^7\)

![Figure 6.2](image-url)  Molecular structure of the palladium Kläui complex 6.6. Only the oxygen atoms from the P=O moieties are labelled. The non-coordinated oxygen atoms can clearly be seen pointing away from the palladium centre.
The gold atom appears to show a distorted square pyramidal coordination geometry. The nitrogen [N(1) and carbon C(41)] atoms of the iminophosphorane ligand, along with two oxygen [O(21) and O(31)] atoms of the Kläui ligand constitute the four corners of the base of the pyramid. The ‘tip’ is provided by the third oxygen O(11), of the Kläui ligand. The gold coordination plane (i.e. the base of the pyramid) is slightly distorted which is expected for
square pyramidal coordination \([\text{Au(I)} \text{ sits } 0.0562(13) \text{ Å above the mean plane}]\). In addition, the \(\text{Au}(1)-\text{O}(11)\) vector is at an angle of approximately \(80^\circ\) to the base of the pyramid.

Five-coordinate square pyramidal complexes of gold(III) are rare but are not entirely unknown. To date, all of the structurally characterised complexes contain rigid ligands with bipyridyl\(^{10-13}\) or phenanthroline\(^{14, 15}\) moieties which coordinate to the gold through two nitrogen atoms. In all cases, one nitrogen atom forms a corner of the base of the pyramid and because of the rigidity of the ligand the other nitrogen is placed at the apex of the pyramid, in an ideal position to interact with the gold (Scheme 6.5). The remaining ligands tend to be halides or pseudohalides, with the exception of one complex which contains \(\text{PPh}_3\) and the bidentate damp ligand (refer to Chapter One).\(^{16}\)

![Scheme 6.5](image) Square pyramidal five coordinate gold(III) complexes containing bipyridine or phenanthroline ligands.

In \(\text{6.5b}\) the interaction between \(\text{Au}(1)\) and \(\text{O}(11)\) appears to be strong enough to hold the molecule in this square pyramidal arrangement. The \(\text{Au}(1)-\text{O}(11)\) bond length \([2.722(2) \text{ Å}]\) is significantly longer than both the \(\text{Au}(1)-\text{O}(21)\) and \(\text{Au}(1)-\text{O}(31)\) bond lengths provided by the formally coordinated oxygen atoms \([2.023(2) \text{ Å and } 2.083(2) \text{ Å respectively}]\). These gold–oxygen distances are very similar to the metal-oxygen bond distances seen in the palladium(II) and platinum(II) \(\beta\)-diketonate complexes \(\text{6.8a}\) and \(\text{6.8b}\). In these complexes the metal–oxygen distances of the weakly coordinated oxygen (\(i.e.\) the apex of the pyramid) are also approximately \(0.7 \text{ Å}\) longer than the metal oxygen distances in the base of the pyramid. However, the angle between the vertical axis of the pyramid (\(i.e.\) the metal – axial oxygen vector) and the base is much more acute \([65.3(2)^\circ\] in the palladium example \(\text{6.8a}\) and \(66.9(3)^\circ\) in the platinum analogue \(\text{6.8b}\)]\(^{17}\)
The bite angle of the Kläui ligand in 6.5b is 91.82(9)°, close to what is expected for square planar geometry. Because of the trans influence differences, the gold–oxygen bond length trans to the carbon [Au(1)–O(31) = 2.083 Å] is longer than the gold–oxygen bond length trans to the nitrogen [Au(1)–O(21) = 2.023(2) Å]. Not surprisingly, the P=O bond lengths of the coordinated oxygens [P(2)–O(21) and P(3)–O(31)] are longer than the P=O bond length of the weakly coordinated oxygen.

Substitution of the two chloride ligands of 6.4 with the Kläui ligands results in some subtle changes to the iminophosphorane moiety. The bite angle of the iminophosphorane increases from 84.86(17)° to 85.55(11)° in 6.5b and this is accompanied by a shortening of the gold–carbon and gold–nitrogen bonds and lengthening of the P=N bond. In complex 6.4 the N-bonded phenyl ring is twisted 54° from the metallacyclic plane \(^{18}\) - in complex 6.5b the ring is almost perpendicular (81°) to the metallacyclic plane, possibly as a result of steric constraints imposed by the bulky Kläui ligand.

6.2.3 NMR spectroscopic analysis

The \(^1\)H and \(^{31}\)P{\(^1\)H} NMR chemical shifts of the Kläui ligands in the complexes 6.3a,b and 6.5a,b are very similar to those in the sodium salts 6.2a and 6.2b. However, the protons arising from the Cp ring of the Kläui ligand move downfield upon coordination. The phosphorus atom in the iminophosphorane moieties of 6.5a (δ 68.6 ppm) and 6.5b (δ 68.2

---

176
(δ 65.5 ppm) is very similar to that seen in the dichloride 6.4 confirming the phosphorus has remained in a five-membered ring.\(^\text{[18]}\) Table 6.2 gives a comparison of these chemical shifts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>CH(_3)</th>
<th>CH(_2)</th>
<th>Cp</th>
<th>P</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.2a</td>
<td>3.59 (vq)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5.03 (s)</td>
<td>112.5 (br)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3a</td>
<td>3.67 (vq)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5.20 (s)</td>
<td>113.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5a</td>
<td>3.54 (vq)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5.13 (s)</td>
<td>120.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2b</td>
<td>1.20 (t)</td>
<td>3.95 (m)</td>
<td>4.97 (s)</td>
<td>110.1 (br)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3b</td>
<td>1.25 (t)</td>
<td>4.06 (m)</td>
<td>5.14 (s)</td>
<td>110.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5b</td>
<td>1.22 (t)</td>
<td>3.90 (m)</td>
<td>5.07 (s)</td>
<td>117.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Kläui complexes of square planar palladium(II) have previously shown fluxionality in solution\(^\text{[6, 7]}\) and it appeared from a first inspection of the \(^1\text{H}\) and \(^{31}\text{P}[^1\text{H}]\) NMR spectra that gold complexes were showing similar behaviour. In addition, the tridentate (nitrogen donor) poly(pyrazolyl)borate ligand shows fluxional behaviour when coordinated to gold(III). At room temperature it appeared all three pyrazolyl moieties were equivalent, however when cooled it was possible to distinguish two bonded pyrazolyl groups and one non-bonded.\(^\text{[19]}\) Because of these reasons we decided to carry out a variable temperature NMR study on the complexes.

\(^{31}\text{P}[^1\text{H}]\) NMR spectroscopy

At room temperature there is a broad peak present at approximately 115 ppm in all the complexes. This is only slightly different from the sodium salts of the ligand (6.2a δ 112.5 ppm, 6.2b δ 110.1 ppm).\(^\text{[20]}\) For complexes 6.5a and 6.5b, this peak integrates 3:1 relative to the phosphorus of the iminophosphorane ligand. When the sample was cooled the behaviour of the complex is dependent on the cycloaurated ligand present (\textit{i.e.} the iminophosphorane or 2-benzylpyridine chelating group).
Figure 6.4  Variable temperature $^{31}$P$\{}^{1}H\}$ NMR spectra of 6.3b (CDCl$_3$).
Figure 6.5  Variable temperature $^{31}$P($^1$H) NMR spectra of 6.5b (CDCl$_3$). The phosphorus signal from the iminophosphorane ligand occurs upfield and is not included in the figures.
For the 2-benzylpyridine derived complexes 6.3a and 6.3b two peaks start to appear at 283K at 135 ppm and 110 ppm in a 1:2 ratio. Presumably the peak at 135 ppm is from the non-coordinated arm of the Kläui ligand. When the solution is cooled to 263 K the second peak starts to split into two distinct triplets (at 115 ppm and 105 ppm which integrate 1:1), corresponding to the phosphorus atoms of the coordinated arms of the ligand. Because of the nonsymmetrical nature of the benzylpyridine ligand two signals appear. The signal from the non-coordinating group is also a triplet. Cooling further to 223 K results in the two peaks from the coordinated phosphorus atoms becoming broader and resolution is lost. The uncoordinated signal now appears as a distinct doublet of doublets ($^{2}J_{PP} \approx 159$ Hz) because of coupling to two distinct (coordinated) phosphorus atoms. Heating the sample from room temperature to 323 K resulted in sharpening of the signal – presumably further heating would have resulted in a sharp signal but limitations of the solvent meant further heating was impossible.

The iminophosphorane complexes 6.5a and 6.5b showed different behaviour. At 283 K 6.5a and 6.5b are still fluxional and it is not until 243 K that the broad peak starts to split into two signals (at 135 ppm and 110 ppm), which again integrate 1:2. At 223 K, the limit that could be reached due to the solvent, the peak at 135 ppm (corresponding to the dangling arm of the ligand) is a definite triplet ($^{2}J_{PP} \approx 153$ Hz) however the peak at 110 ppm is still broad and unresolved. Presumably, if the sample could be cooled further this peak would split into two triplets, analogous to that seen for the benzylpyridine complexes. Again, heating the sample from room temperature to 323 K results in the peak becoming sharper.

These results suggest a similar behaviour to what was observed with the poly(pyrazolylborate) ligands. At 303 K there is rapid interchange between the coordinated and the non-coordinated arms of the Kläui ligands making the three arms appear equivalent. When cooled, fluxionality is lost and three signals are observed which correspond to the three different environments that the arms occupy. The low temperature configurations reiterate what was observed crystallographically.
\(^1\text{H NMR Spectroscopy}\)
Again evidence of fluxionality can be seen in the \(^1\text{H} \text{NMR} \) spectra. At 303 K the methyl protons of the Kläui ligand in \(6.3\text{a}\) appear as a virtual quartet (Figure 6.6a). This is because the molecule is fluxional at this temperature and there is rapid interchange between the two bonded arms and the one non-bonded arm of the Kläui ligand. Therefore, the virtual quartet arises from 18 equivalent protons coupled to three equivalent phosphorus atoms (i.e. a \(A_{18}X_3\) spin system). A similar pattern is observed for \(6.5\text{a}\).

When the complex is cooled it loses fluxionality and as a result the methyl protons (or phosphorus atoms) are no longer equivalent. The virtual quartet that is present at 303K splits into two signals which integrate with a 1:2 ratio. Again these signals show virtual coupling.

![Figure 6.6](image)

\textbf{Figure 6.6} Variable temperature \(^1\text{H} \text{NMR} \) spectra of a) \(6.3\text{a}\) at 303 K, b) \(6.3\text{a}\) at 223 K, c) \(6.3\text{b}\) at 303 K and d) \(6.3\text{b}\) at 223 K (CDCl\(_3\), peaks marked * are from impurities in the sample).

Complexes \(6.3\text{b}\) and \(6.5\text{b}\), which contain ethyl groups on the Kläui ligand show similar behaviour however there is complexity arising from the ethyl versus methyl groups. At 303 K the methyl groups only show coupling to the neighbouring protons thus appearing as a simple triplet. The signal for the methylene protons was a broad multiplet, assumed to arise because
the protons showed coupling to both the neighbouring protons and the phosphorus. Again, when the complex is cooled the signal splits into two, which integrate with a 1:2 ratio.

The benzylpyridine ring in 6.3a and 6.3b also shows fluxionality (because of the inversion of six-membered auracycle), and this has been discussed in detail before.\textsuperscript{(21)} As a result, at 303 K the CH\textsubscript{2} protons appear as a broad singlet. Cooling to 223 K results in the signal splitting into two doublets of doublets.

### 6.3 Conclusions

The reaction of cycloaurated gold(III) dichlorides with Kläui ligands results in the formation of cationic gold(III) salts. In the solid state the Kläui ligands coordinate to the gold through two of the three available oxygen atoms with the third above the gold coordination plane. This gives the gold(III) a distorted square pyramidal geometry and is the first structurally characterised example of this geometry for gold(III) with ligands other than those containing rigid bipyridine or phenanthroline backbones. In solution there is rapid interchange (on the NMR timescale) between the coordinated and non-coordinated oxygen atoms, however when cooled the ligands lose their fluxionality and three different environments can be observed.

### 6.4 Experimental

#### 6.4.1 General

The gold dichloride complexes 6.1 and 6.4 were synthesised from literature procedures,\textsuperscript{(18, 22)} with both the Kläui ligands 6.2a and 6.2b purchased from Strem Chemicals. The NMR chemical shifts that are reported in the following experimental are those observed at 303K.
6.4.2 Syntheses

Synthesis of 6.3a
(2-bp)AuCl$_2$ 6.1 (1.00 g, 0.230 mmol) and the Kläui ligand 6.2a (0.109 g, 0.230 mmol) were dissolved in dichloromethane (20 mL) with Tl[BF$_4$] (0.201 g, excess) and stirred in a foil-covered flask for 24 hours. After filtration and reduction in volume, slow addition of diethyl ether to the solution precipitated 6.3a as a yellow solid (0.066 g, 32%).

Found: C 30.5, H 3.4, N 2.3; C$_{23}$H$_{33}$BNO$_5$F$_4$P$_3$CoAu requires C 30.6, H 3.7, N 1.6%.

NMR: $^1$H: $\delta$ 3.67 (vq, 18H, CH$_3$), 4.58 (br s, 2H, CH$_2$), 5.20 (s, 5H, $Cp$), 7.00 (m, 1H, Ar-H), 7.17 (m, 3H, Ar-H), 7.69 (t, 1H, Ar-H), 7.88 (d, 1H, Ar-H), 8.14 (t, 1H, Ar-H), 8.96 (d, 1H, Ar-H); $^{13}$C{$^1$H}: $\delta$ 46.6 (CH$_2$), 52.7 (CH$_3$), 90.5 (Cp), 125.5, 126.9, 127.0, 128.2 128.5 (all aryl C-H), 129.0, 130.0, 131.1 (all aryl C), 143.7, 150.6, 156.9 (all aryl C-H); $^{31}$P{$^1$H}: $\delta$ 113.1 (br s).

ESI-MS: m/z: 816.040 (100%, [M]$^+$, calculated 816.036).

Synthesis of 6.3b
(2-bp)AuCl$_2$ 6.1 (0.100 g, 0.230 mmol) and the Kläui ligand 6.2b (0.129 g, 0.230 mmol) were dissolved in dichloromethane (20 mL) and stirred in a foil-covered flask with Tl[BF$_4$] (0.202 g, excess) for 24 hours. The insoluble thallium salts were filtered off and the solution was reduced in volume. Addition of diethyl ether to the solution until it went cloudy and storage overnight at -20 °C gave yellow crystals (0.139 g, 61%) of 6.3b.

Found: C 35.3, H 4.6, N 1.5; C$_{29}$H$_{45}$BNO$_5$F$_4$P$_3$CoAu requires C 35.3, H 4.6, N 1.4%.

NMR: $^1$H: $\delta$ 1.25 (t, 18H, CH$_3$), 4.06 (br s, 12H, CH$_2$ - Kläui), 4.56 (br s, 2H, CH$_2$ - benzylpyridine), 5.14 (s, 5H, C$\beta$), 6.96 (m, 1H, Ar-H), 7.14 (m, 3H, Ar-H), 7.60 (t, 1H, Ar-H), 7.93 (d, 1H, Ar-H), 8.16 (t, 1H, Ar-H), 8.86 (d, 1H, Ar-H); $^{13}$C{$^1$H}: $\delta$ 16.5 (CH$_3$), 46.4
(CH₂ – benzylpyridine), 61.4 (CH₂ – Kläui), 90.7 (Cₚ), 124.9 – 157.0 (all aryl C) ³¹P{¹H}: δ 110.4 (br s).

ESI-MS: m/z: 900.133 (100%, [M]+, calculated 900.130).

**Preparation of 6.5a**

The gold(III) dichloride 6.4 (0.100 g, 0.162 mmol), the Kläui ligand 6.2a (0.077 g, 0.162 mmol) and Tl[BF₄](0.142 g, excess) were dissolved in dichloromethane (20 mL). The resulting solution was stirred in a foil-covered flask for 24 hours. The insoluble salts were removed and addition of diethyl ether to the filtrate caused immediate precipitation of 6.5a as a yellow solid (0.047 g, 27%).

Found: C 40.3, H 3.9, N 2.0; C₃₅H₄₂BNO₉F₄P₄CoAu requires C 38.7, H 3.9, N 1.3%.

NMR: ¹H: δ 3.54 (vq, 18H, CH₃), 5.13 (s, 5H, Cₚ) 7.01-7.07 (m, 5H, Ar-H), 7.08 (m, 5H, Ar-H), 7.40-7.90 (m, 14H, Ar-H), ¹³C{¹H}: δ 52.3 (CH₃); 90.2 (Cₚ), 123-150 (aryl C); ³¹P{¹H}: δ 68.6 (s, P=N), 120.4 (br, P Kläui), integral 1:3.

ESI-MS: m/z: 1000.083 (100%, M⁺, calculated 1000.080).

**Preparation of 6.5b**

6.4 (0.101 g, 0.163 mmol) along with the Kläui ligand 6.2b (0.091 g, 0.163 mmol) were dissolved in dichloromethane (20 mL) with Tl[BF₄] (0.142 g, excess) and stirred for 24 hours in a foil-covered flask. After filtration to remove the insoluble thallium salts slow evaporation of the dichloromethane solvent gave yellow crystals of 6.5b (0.102 g, 54%).

Found: C 42.1, H 4.7, N 1.3; C₄₁H₅₄BNO₉F₄P₄CoAu requires C 42.0, H 4.7, N 1.2%.
NMR: $^1\text{H}$: $\delta$ 1.22 (t, 18H, CH$_3$), 3.90 (m, 12H, CH$_2$), 5.07 (s, 5H, Cp) 7.01-7.07 (m, 5H, Ar-H), 7.10-7.17 (m, 1H, Ar-H), 7.41-7.50 (m, 2H, Ar-H), 7.53-7.60 (m, 5H, Ar-H), 7.70-7.76 (m, 2H, Ar-H), 7.82-7.89 (m, 4H, Ar-H); $^{13}\text{C}^{\text{1H}}$: $\delta$ 16.7 (CH$_3$); 61.1 (CH$_2$), 90.6 (Cp), 126-150 (aryl C); $^{31}\text{P}^{\text{1H}}$: $\delta$ 68.2 (s, P=N), 117.2 (br, P Kläui), integral 3:1.

ESI-MS: $m/z$: 1084.180 (100%, M$^+$, calculated 1084.174).

6.4.3 X-ray crystal structure determination of 6.5b
Yellow crystals of X-ray quality were grown by slow evaporation of a dichloromethane solution of the crude product at room temperature.

Data collection
Unit cell dimensions and reflection data were collected at the University of Canterbury on a Bruker Nonius Apex II CCD Diffractometer at 93 K. Absorption corrections to the data were made by SADABS.$^{(23)}$ Crystal and refinement data for the complex is presented in Table 6.3 – the crystallographic information file for 6.5b is included on the supplementary CD.

Solution and refinement
The structure was solved using the Patterson methods option of SHELXS-97.$^{(24)}$ The gold atom was initially located, with all other non-hydrogen atoms subsequently found by a series of difference maps (SHELXL-97$^{(25)}$), and the hydrogen atoms in calculated positions. All non-hydrogen atoms were refined as anisotropic. Two ethyl arms of the Kläui ligand displayed slight disorder and as a result the CH$_3$ groups (and corresponding methylene hydrogen atoms) were refined in two positions. The BF$_4^-$ anion was also disordered, twirling around a BF bond, however the disorder was not resolved.
### Table 6.3
Crystal and refinement data for the complex 6.5b.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complex</th>
<th>6.5b</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Formula</strong></td>
<td>$\text{C}_4\text{H}_6\text{BNO}_5\text{F}_2\text{P}_2\text{CoAu}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Molecular Weight</strong></td>
<td>1171.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>$T$/K</strong></td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crystal system</strong></td>
<td>Monoclinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Space group</strong></td>
<td>$C2/c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>$a$ (Å)</strong></td>
<td>30.7189(10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>$b$ (Å)</strong></td>
<td>10.1416(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>$c$ (Å)</strong></td>
<td>30.0068(10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>$a$ (°)</strong></td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>$β$ (°)</strong></td>
<td>100.490(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>$γ$ (°)</strong></td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>$V$ (Å$^3$)</strong></td>
<td>9192.3(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>$Z$</strong></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>$D_{\text{calc}}$ (g cm$^{-3}$)</strong></td>
<td>1.693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>$T_{\text{max, min}}$</strong></td>
<td>0.5511, 0.1530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number of unique reflections</strong></td>
<td>10525</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number of observed reflections [I&gt;2$σ$(I)]</strong></td>
<td>9567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>$R[I&gt;2σ(I)]$</strong></td>
<td>0.0278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>$wR^2$ (all data)</strong></td>
<td>0.0691</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Goodness of Fit</strong></td>
<td>1.049</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6.5 References

CHAPTER SEVEN

A Preliminary Study of the Catalytic Activity of Gold(III) Complexes

7.1 Introduction

7.1.1 Gold(III) homogenous catalysis

Homogenous gold(III) catalysis is an area of rapidly expanding research – new reports on the topic are appearing on a weekly basis. Only recently an entire issue of The Journal of Organometallic Chemistry (Gold Catalysis – New Perspectives for Homogeneous Catalysis, Issue 4, Volume 694, 2009) was dedicated to homogenous gold catalysis. However, this has not always been the case and up until the late 1980’s catalysis (both homogeneous and heterogeneous) by gold and its compounds was relatively unexplored. The lack of research has been attributed to a number of reasons. Hashmi proposed that the high value of gold and its corresponding compounds may have led to the thought that gold catalysts are an unviable option on economic grounds. In addition, the inertness of gold may have led to the assumption that any catalyst containing the metal would be inactive.\(^1\)

Parish proposed that the lack of homogeneous gold catalysts may be because the type of catalytic cycles that the transition metals (and their compounds) are involved in requires a delicate balance between two oxidation states \textit{i.e.} a finely balanced oxidative addition/reductive elimination cycle. Well known examples of this type of catalysis include the rhodium(I)/(III) cycle used in the Monsanto process (manufacture of acetic acid by the carbonylation of methanol) and the Pd(0)/Pd(II) cycle in Heck reactions. Although gold(I) complexes are known to readily undergo oxidative addition the resulting gold(III) complexes are either too stable to react further or are so unstable they react immediately. Reductive elimination from gold(III) complexes is also problematic. In addition gold(III) hydrides are
uncommon, therefore oxidation of gold(I) by \( \text{H}_2 \) or the formation of alkenes by \( \beta \)-elimination is rare.\(^{(2)}\)

An extensive review by Hashmi covers homogenous gold catalysis of organic reactions up until late 2006\(^{(1)}\) and earlier reviews on the subject are also available.\(^{(3-5)}\) The early history of catalysis by gold (pre 1977) has also recently been reviewed by Bond.\(^{(6)}\) These reviews indicate that the majority of the work on homogeneous gold catalysis has been conducted using \( \text{AuCl}_3 \) which is very hygroscopic and acidic. Therefore, the development of air- and moisture-stable complexes that can act as catalysts in acid sensitive reactions is desirable.

### 7.1.2 Catalytic addition of 2-methylfuran to methyl vinyl ketone

Gold(III) compounds have been used to catalyse the addition of 2-methylfuran \( \text{7.1} \) to methyl vinyl ketone (MVK) \( \text{7.2} \) to give 4-(5-methyl-2-furanyl)butan-2-one \( \text{7.3} \) (Scheme 7.1).

Without a catalyst the reaction occurs under a number of different conditions including carrying out the reaction in the presence of an ethereal solution of \( \text{BF}_3 \) at low temperatures\(^{(7)}\) or by using high pressures.\(^{(8)}\) \( \text{Cu(OTf)}_2 \) has also been shown to catalyse the reaction.\(^{(9)}\)

![Scheme 7.1](image)

**Scheme 7.1**  Gold catalysed addition of 2-methylfuran \( \text{7.1} \) to methyl vinyl ketone (MVK) \( \text{7.2} \) to give 4-(5-methyl-2-furanyl)butan-2-one \( \text{7.3} \).

Hashmi et al. have proposed a mechanism for the catalytic cycle. In separate \(^1\text{H} \) NMR experiments \( \text{AuCl}_3 \) was added to solutions of either MVK \( \text{7.2} \) or 2-methylfuran \( \text{7.1} \) in \( \text{CD}_3\text{CN} \). With MVK no reaction was observed. However, for 2-methylfuran the proton spectrum changed and the solution became darker. Unfortunately the NMR signals were broad and the product of this reaction was not characterised but addition of MVK to this solution afforded the addition product \( \text{7.3} \).
Hence it was proposed that auration of the furan occurs (to give I, Scheme 7.2) via direct electrophilic attack by the gold catalyst\textsuperscript{(10)} – this is plausible as it has been known since 1931 that AuCl\textsubscript{3} activates the C-H bonds of arenes such as benzene.\textsuperscript{(11)} The furyl-gold species (I, Scheme 7.2) then acts as a nucleophile and undergoes a 1,4-Michael addition to MVK to give either a gold-enolate (IIA, Scheme 7.2) which may undergo the equivalent of a keto-enol tautomerism to give the gold-ketonate species (IIB, Scheme 7.2). Hashmi proposed that the ketonate species IIB is an intermediate in the catalytic pathway, and although there is probably equilibrium between IIA and IIB, we feel that the enolate species IIA would better represent the Michael addition product. The last step in the mechanism is protonation (by the
proton lost in step one) – and this is more likely to occur in the enolate species (a gold-oxygen bond would be cleaved by a weak acid (H⁺) with more ease than a gold-carbon bond). Although protonation of II A gives the enol III A, it would easily undergo keto-enol tautomerisation to give the ultimate product IIIB. In addition, Hashmi noted the β-H elimination from II B to give IIIC did not occur. The gold-enolate isomer II A explains this observation, as there is no opportunity for β-H elimination to occur in this compound.

It was found that AuCl₃ catalyses the above reaction very efficiently with 80-90% yields of 7.3 after 40 minutes with 1 mol % catalyst. The Au(I) complexes PE₃AuCl and (THT)AuCl (THT = tetrahydrothiophene) also catalyse the reaction, albeit less effectively and only in the presence of AgBF₄ (80-90%, 1 mol % catalyst, 1 day). It is unclear how the Ag[BF₄] enhanced the catalytic activity in this case, however oxidation of the Au(I) to Au(III) by the silver can not be excluded. It is unlikely that the catalytic activity is due to the Ag[BF₄] (see later).

Because 7.3 can be formed from 2-methylfuran 7.1 and MVK 7.2 in the presence of HCl, experiments using HCl (a Brønsted acid) as a catalyst were carried out. Indeed 7.3 was obtained (50% yield) but 4-chlorobutan-2-one was also formed as a side product. Under the reaction conditions the hydrolysis products of AuCl₃ are H[AuCl₃OH] and HCl – also Brønsted acids. Therefore both H[AuCl₃] and HCl were evaluated as catalysts but they proved much less effective than AuCl₃, although the reaction could be forced if a large excess of MVK was present. Hence it is possible, but unlikely, that the catalytically active species may also be a Brønsted acid so interpretation of the results has to be considered carefully. However, catalysis of the reaction by the proton (i.e. a Brønsted acid) that is lost in the first step of the mechanism is unlikely as when 2-methylfuran and MVK were treated with 5% H[ClO₄] only an unidentified polymeric material was formed.

In light of these results Aguilar et al. proposed that organogold(III) complexes may also be stable catalysts in this reaction, and NMR spectroscopy may provide an insight into some of the gold intermediates. In addition, the cyclometallated complexes offer advantages over AuCl₃ – they are not as acidic as AuCl₃ so may be used in acid sensitive reactions and in
contrast to hygroscopic AuCl₃, the cycloaurated complexes are air and moisture stable. Thus a selection of C,N and N,N’ cyclometallated gold(III) complexes (Scheme 7.3) were evaluated as catalysts in the reaction, with the results presented in Table 7.1.\(^{(13, 14)}\)

![Chemical structures](attachment:image.png)

**Scheme 7.3** The gold(III) iminophosphorane and related cycloaurated complexes evaluated as catalysts.

It is immediately obvious from Table 7.1 that the catalytic activity of the neutral complexes 7.4 – 7.6 is greatly enhanced by the presence of silver salts. Aguilar *et al.* proposed the catalytically active species in these cases is the cationic solvated complex 7.10, formed by the forced removal of the chloride ligands (Scheme 7.4a). Unfortunately 7.10 could not be isolated but \(^{31}\)P NMR spectroscopy supported the proposed cationic structure. However, addition of either 2-methylfuran or MVK to separate solutions of 7.6a did not result in any changes to the positions or the shape of the \(^{31}\)P or \(^1\)H NMR signals of either 2-methylfuran, MVK or the catalyst. In the absence of silver(I) salts there is still catalytic activity and this
has been attributed to the solution equilibrium between a cationic species 7.11 (formed by \textit{in situ} dissociation of a chloride ligand) and the neutral iminophosphorane complex (Scheme 7.4b).\(^{(13)}\)

**Table 7.1** Performance of cyclometallated complexes in the addition of 2-methylfuran to MVK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>1% Catalyst 6 hr, 25 °C</th>
<th>1% Catalyst 18 hr, 25 °C</th>
<th>1% Catalyst 2.2% Ag(OTf) 18 hr, 25 °C</th>
<th>1% Catalyst 2.2% Ag(OTf) 18 hr, 25 °C</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6a</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6b</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.9a</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.9b</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N/A  Catalytic activity not reported

\[ \text{N/A} \]

**Scheme 7.4** Formation of the solvated cationic gold(III) species when a) silver salts are present and b) in the absence of silver salts.
The simple coordination complex 7.7 only showed catalytic activity when silver salts were present, and even then it was not as active as the cycloaurated complexes. In addition the catalyst decomposed to metallic gold during the reaction. It therefore appears that the C,N cycloaurated systems are conferring stability to the gold(III) centre throughout the catalytic cycle.

In contrast, the cationic N,N’ cycloaurated iminophosphoranes 7.8, 7.9a and 7.9b showed little difference in the catalytic activity when silver cations were present. This observation was attributed to partial dissociation of the ligand effectively giving a vacant coordination site on the gold atom (Scheme 7.5). NMR spectroscopy was consistent with this observation. The 31P chemical shift of the catalyst moves upfield during the catalytic process (to an intermediate value between the complex and free ligand) and in addition, the proton ortho to the pyridyl nitrogen also shifts upfield – both these observations point towards the formation of 7.12. Therefore, the ligands have been described as ‘organic stabilisers’ for a reactive form of gold.(14)

\[
\text{Scheme 7.5 Formation of the cationic solvated gold(III) species when a nitrogen donor atom is displaced.}
\]

The complexes 7.8 and 7.9a,b also catalyse the addition of azulene 7.13 (which is acid-sensitive) to MVK more efficiently than AuCl₃ (approximately a 90% yield in 24 hours compared with a 55% yield over three days). In both cases the double addition product 7.14 was formed with excellent selectivity (Scheme 7.6). The greater catalytic activity displayed by the cycloaurated complexes may be because they are less acidic than AuCl₃.(14)
Scheme 7.6  Gold catalysed addition of acid-sensitive azulene 7.13 to MVK 7.2 to give the double addition product 7.14.

In summary it appears from these results that the catalytic ability of the complexes is dependent on the presence of a vacant coordination site on the metal. This can occur via two possible mechanisms – the dissociation/removal of a chloride ligand or dissociation of the neutral (nitrogen) donor atom. The first method is more applicable for neutral complexes, the second for cationic complexes.

7.1.3  Scope of this work

As described in the preceding section, Aguilar et al. have previously shown that cyclometallated gold(III) compounds efficiently catalyse the addition of 2-methylfuran to MVK.\(^\text{(13)}\) We wished to evaluate the catalytic activity of the gold complexes described in this thesis and the above reaction was chosen. The method described by Aguilar seemed relatively straightforward and could easily be extended to other gold complexes and the literature results provided a useful benchmark.

The following chapter describes the results from a brief investigation into the catalytic activity of a selection of compounds which have been discussed in the preceding chapters of this thesis. Because the cycloaurated systems containing pyidine-2-thiocarboxamide ligands (Chapter Five) were not stable in solution their catalytic activity was not evaluated.
7.2 Results and Discussion

7.2.1 Development of method
The method that was used by Aguilar et al. was primarily gravimetric. After the appropriate time, the reaction solution was filtered through a short silica capillary, eluted with a mixture of hexane and diethyl ether and then evaporated to dryness – the weight of the residual material was used to calculate the percentage yield of the reaction product and thus the efficiency of the catalyst.\(^{13}\) However this method was found not to be overly effective and may overestimate the percentage yield of the reaction. When the method was followed exactly, and a \(^1\)H NMR spectrum of the ‘product’ was recorded it showed traces of the original gold catalyst and other impurities. Therefore it was felt that GC-MS would be a more accurate method to use.

A pure sample (by NMR spectroscopy) of 4-(5-methyl-2-furanyl)butan-2-one \(7.3\) was acquired by chromatographic purification of the crude product (obtained by the method above) on a silica gel plate, eluting with 1:5 ethyl acetate/petroleum spirits. Three bands were obtained and band one \((R_f = 0.5)\) was identified as the product. Using a standard GC-MS method (described later) the retention time of \(7.3\) was found to be 9.6 minutes. \(o\)-Xylene was chosen as the internal standard for a number of reasons – the retention time (4.6 minutes) was close to that of the product, it is inert towards any reaction and it is relatively non-volatile.

Known standard solutions of \(7.3\) and \(o\)-xylene were analysed by GC-MS. Figure 7.1 shows the response factor (calculated from the area under the two peaks) of \(7.3\) relative to \(o\)-xylene at different molar concentrations. Therefore, if a known amount of \(o\)-xylene (1 mmol) is added to the sample before GC analysis, the ratio of the areas under the peaks \((7.3\) and \(o\)-xylene) can be used to determine the amount (in moles) of product in the sample using the formula (where 1.0808 is the response factor from the calibration curve) shown in Equation 7.1.

\[
\text{Moles of } 7.3 = \left( \frac{\text{Area of } 7.3}{\text{Area of } o\text{-xylene}} \right) \times 1.0808 \quad \text{.................................. Equation 7.1}
\]
7.2.2 Catalytic activity of C, N cycloaurated complexes

The catalytic activity of the iminophosphorane based systems described in Chapter Two was investigated. In order to determine if substitution of the cis chloride ligands affects the catalytic activity a range gold(III) complexes with different ligands (e.g. catecholate, thiosalicylate) were evaluated (Scheme 7.7) and the results are presented in Table 7.2. In addition, the activity of 2.29a was re-evaluated using the GC-MS method to compare with the results obtained by Aguilar et al.

From the results of Aguilar et al. it is not surprising that the addition of Ag⁺ (in the form of Ag[BF₄]) greatly increases the catalytic activity of the neutral complexes. The chloride ligands are removed from the gold (in the form of AgCl) leaving a vacant coordination site on the metal which is presumably where catalysis occurs. When no silver is present catalysis still occurs, probably due to the dissociation of a chloride ligand (Scheme 7.4). Altering the N-substituent on the simple iminophosphoranes did not change the catalytic activity greatly, nor does placing the P=N bond outside the metallacyclic ring (exo isomer 2.43). However, the stabilised iminophosphorane 2.46 (the endo isomer) showed greater catalytic activity – possibly because the N-acyl substituent is a weaker base thus dissociates from the metal centre (to form a vacant coordination site) with more ease.
Complex **2.39**, which has a chloride ligand and a relatively labile PPh$_3$ ligand, showed greater activity than the dichloride complexes in the absence of silver cations. Presumably this is because the neutral phosphine dissociates from the metal with more ease than the chloride ligand, thus leaving a vacant coordination site. When silver salts are present the chloride ligand is also removed giving a ‘permanent’ vacant coordination site on the gold, which leads to an increase in catalytic activity.

The catecholate **2.35a** and thiosalicylate **2.36a** complexes were catalytically inactive. This is not surprising as the metallacyclic ring formed from the chelating catecholate and thiosalicylate dianions are held in place better than the monodentate chloride ligands. Thus dissociation of the ligand will not occur to give a vacant coordination site on the metal. The cationic dithiocarbamate complex was also catalytically inactive.
It is evident from Table 7.2 that the results using the GC-MS method differ from those obtained when the gravimetric method of Aguilar is used. This is more noticeable when there are no silver salts present.

The simple Au(III) salt [Me₄N][AuCl₄] shows better activity (with no silver present) than the cycloaurated complexes. This is not surprising as H[AuCl₄] also shows catalytic activity, however with [Me₄N][AuCl₄] there is no source of protons so the activity can be attributed to the gold centre. The salt Ag[BF₄] is inactive, hence possible catalysis from BF₃ (formed by hydrolysis of [BF₄]) can be excluded (refer to section 7.1.2).
7.2.3 Catalytic activity of C,E (E=S, Se) cycloaurated complexes

Because the catalytic activity of the iminophosphorane systems was promising, the activity of the isoelectronic phosphine chalcogenide (Scheme 7.8) was also evaluated. Table 7.3 shows the results that were obtained.

![Scheme 7.8 C,E cycloaurated gold complexes that were evaluated as catalysts.](image)

Table 7.3 Performance of cycloaurated triphenylphosphine sulfide and selenide as catalysts in the addition of 2-methylfuran to MVK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>% Yield of 7.3, determined by GC-MS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1% Catalyst Loading 18 hr, 25 °C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.2 % AgBF₄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.16b</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.16c</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Again the presence of silver salts greatly increases the catalytic activity of the complexes, most probably due to the reasons discussed above. The selenide complex shows a higher catalytic activity than the sulfide, or indeed any of the C,N donor systems described above. This may be explained in terms of the strength of the trans influence of the neutral donor ligand. The selenide donor is soft thus exerts a higher trans influence compared with the harder sulfide or nitrogen donors. Thus, the chloride trans to the selenide will leave the gold coordination sphere with more ease than the chloride trans to either a sulfur or a nitrogen. Therefore, the chloride dissociation described in Scheme 7.4 will be more effective for the selenide, or indeed, any complexes which contain a high trans influence donor ligand.
From the crystallographic data presented in Chapters Two and Three (excluding 2.46), the complexes can be ranked from those with the highest trans influence donor to those with the lowest – i.e. the complexes with the longest Au-Cl bond trans to the neutral donor ligand will contain the highest trans influence donor. Thus the series ranked from the highest trans influence donor to the lowest follows: \(3.16c > 3.16b > 2.29b > 2.29a > 2.43\)

This series roughly follows the order of the catalytic activity when no silver cations are present, however 2.46 breaks this trend. This may be because 2.46 contains a phenacyl ring, however the reasons are unclear. Conversely, the enhanced catalytic activity of 2.46 and 3.16c may be because the NCOPh and Se group dissociate from the gold centre with more ease. More examples (including replicating the catalytic results) are needed to shed light on the trends. In addition, an investigation into the identity of the active catalyst would prove worthwhile.

### 7.2.4 Catalytic activity of \(N,N'\) cycloaurated complexes

The catalytic activity of the \(N,N'\) based systems described in Chapter Four (Scheme 7.9) was evaluated to determine if changing the type of ligand coordinated to the gold alters the catalytic activity. The results are presented in Table 7.4.

![Scheme 7.9](image_url)  
**Scheme 7.9** \(N,N'\) cycloaurated gold complexes described in Chapter Four that were evaluated as catalysts.
Table 7.4  Performance of N,N’ cycloaurated 2-pyridylsulfonamides as catalysts in the addition of 2-methylfuran to MVK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>1% Catalyst Loading 18 hr, 25 °C</th>
<th>1% Catalyst Loading 18 hr, 25 °C</th>
<th>2.2 % AgBF₄</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.8a</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>73</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8c</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9a</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9b</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.10</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With the exception of 4.10, the N,N’ cycloaurated sulfonamides were poor catalysts in the absence of Ag[BF₄]. The poor performance of the N,N’ based systems is somewhat surprising. As described in Chapter Four the N,N’ based ligands do not stabilise the gold as well as the C,N metallated species therefore it might be expected that the pyridyl donor could dissociate from the gold thus providing a vacant coordination site on the metal for catalysis to occur. However, it appears that for 4.8 and 4.9 the complexes are decomposing before the catalysis occurs. Complex 4.10 differs in that the system is rigid – this appears to be imparting some stability onto the complexes and decomposition does not occur as rapidly. These systems would benefit from more study including acquiring information on the catalytic profiling of other Au(III) systems containing rigid chelating ligands.

Presumably the addition of Ag[BF₄] produces the solvated cations analogous to those formed with C,N cyclometallated species (Scheme 7.4). These species have a greater catalytic activity than the neutral species, possibly because they are more stable in solution. Again, an investigation into the true identity of the catalyst would aid in understanding the difference in activities of the C,N and N,N’ cycloaurated complexes.
7.3 Conclusions
The results that have been presented show that the Au(III) complexes described in the preceding chapters are just as efficient at catalysing the addition of 2-methylfuran to MVK as AuCl₃ and the organometallic compounds described by Aguilar et al. Because the complexes are air- and moisture-stable they are easily handled and stored. In addition, synthesis of the sulfonamide complexes is relatively straight-forward.

These initial results are promising however further work is needed to fully understand the results and to ascertain the catalytically active species. It appears that the gold(III) dichloride metallacycles are pre-catalysts – the active catalyst probably has a vacant coordination site on the metal centre formed by either dissociation of the neutral donor or the chloride ligand. It appears that the cationic gold(III) species are catalytically more active (e.g. 2.39) hence an investigation into other cationic species with weaker donor atoms (e.g. replacing PPh₃ with P(OPh)₃) would be useful.

In addition it would be worthwhile to investigate other factors in the catalytic reaction. For example, replacing the Ag[BF₄] with Tl[BF₄] would determine if the oxidising Ag⁺ cation plays any role in the mechanism. Likewise, anions other than [BF₄]⁻ could be investigated, to determine if they have a role.

7.4 Experimental

7.4.1 General
2-Methylfuran and methyl vinyl ketone (Aldrich) were used as received. o-Xylene and acetonitrile were distilled before use. The reactions were carried out at 25° C under a nitrogen atmosphere.
7.4.2 Catalysis conditions
2-Methylfuran 7.1 (2 mmol, 0.1793 mL), methyl vinyl ketone 7.2 (2 mmol, 0.1665 mL), the gold catalyst (0.02 mmol, 1% catalyst loading) and the Ag[BF₄] (if needed) were stirred in acetonitrile (5 mL) for 18 hours. The acetonitrile and any unreacted reactants were removed under vacuum. The product was taken up into diethyl ether/hexane (20 mL, 3:1) and passed through a silica column. o-Xylene (1 mmol, 0.1210 mL) is added and 0.050 mL of this solution is transferred to a GC vial and made up to ~ 1.5 mL with hexanes.

7.4.3 GC-MS Conditions
GC-MS experiments were run on a HP 6890 Series GC System coupled to a HP 5973 Mass Selective Detector (operating in TIC mode). 3 µL of the sample was introduced onto a non-polar column (ZB-5, 30 m x 0.25 mm, 0.25 µm film thickness) by an autosampler. The oven was initially held at 50 °C, then the temperature was increased at 8 °C per minute until 290 °C was reached. Helium was used as the carrier gas (flow rate 1 mL/min) at a pressure of 9 psi. Manual integration of the peaks corresponding to o-xylene and 7.3 gave the peak areas that were to be used in the calculation. The retention times of o-xylene (4.6 minutes) and 7.3 (9.6 minutes) were confirmed by GC traces of the pure compounds.

7.5 References


APPENDIX ONE

General Experimental Procedures, Instrumental Techniques and Preparation of Starting Materials

I.1 General Experimental Procedures
Unless specifically stated, chemicals were used as received from commercial sources. The majority of the gold compounds synthesised were not air or moisture sensitive but were stored in the dark as a precaution against light. With the exception of the preparative methods described in Chapters Four and Five, an oil-bath was used when refluxing solutions. For the methods described in Chapters Four and Five the round bottom flasks were mounted upon a foil dish.

Purification of solvents
Dry, degassed, deoxygenated diethyl ether, dichloromethane, hexane, THF and toluene were obtained from a Pure Solv™ solvent purification system. Prior to use, acetonitrile was distilled from CaH₂ and acetone from CaSO₄.

Air-, moisture- or light-sensitive reactions
Any reactions that were air- or moisture-sensitive were carried out under a nitrogen atmosphere using standard Schlenk techniques. Moisture-sensitive reactions were carried out in glassware that had previously been oven dried. Light-sensitive reactions were carried out in foil-covered flasks.
I.2 Instrumental Techniques and Analysis

I.2.1 Infrared Spectroscopy

Unless otherwise stated IR spectra were recorded as KBr disks on either a Digilab Scimitar FTS 2000 series spectrometer or a Perkin-Elmer Spectrum 100 FT-IR spectrometer. In all cases the region scanned was 450 – 4500 cm\(^{-1}\).

I.2.2 NMR Spectroscopy

NMR Spectroscopy was performed on either a Bruker DRX 300 (\(^1\)H = 300.13 Hz, \(^{13}\)C = 75.47 MHz, \(^{31}\)P = 121.49 MHz) or 400 (\(^1\)H = 400.13 MHz, \(^{13}\)C = 100.61 MHz) spectrometer at 30 °C. Proton and carbon spectra were referenced to residual solvent peaks (CDCl\(_3\) C = 77.16, H = 7.26; d\(_6\)DMSO C = 39.52, H = 2.50 ppm).\(^{(2)}\) Phosphorus spectra were referenced to H\(_3\)PO\(_4\) (0.0 ppm). Carbon spectra were routinely acquired at a lower tip angle (30 or 45°) with an extended delay time (3-5 sec) in an attempt to optimise the conditions needed to detect the slowly relaxing quaternary carbons. In addition to these basic experiments, a number of more complex 1-D and 2-D experiments (detailed below for the assignment of complex 4.8c) were needed to fully assign the spectra.

\(^1\)H-\(^1\)H COSY

In a \(^1\)H-\(^1\)H COSY (COrrelation SpectroscopY) spectrum the signals of a normal \(^1\)H NMR spectrum are correlated with each other, and cross peaks appear if signals are coupled to each other. The standard \(^1\)H-\(^1\)H COSY that was used was optimised for \(^3\)J\(_{HH}\) coupling. Figure A.1 shows the aromatic region of the \(^1\)H-\(^1\)H COSY of 4.8c. The \(^3\)J\(_{HH}\) coupling can clearly be seen and from this the order of the protons around the ring can be determined e.g. the proton at 9.04 ppm (H-1) shows a correlation (a cross peak) to the proton at 7.80 ppm (H-2), hence is next to it on the pyridyl ring.
1-D SELTOCSY
The 1-D SELTOCSY was used in preference to the 2-D TOCSY experiment as the acquisition time was shorter, the resolution was better (therefore coupling constants can be determined) and any unwanted signals (e.g. solvent) were eliminated. In the experiment, one signal (i.e. one proton environment) is irradiated and any signals which are correlated to the irradiated peak will show up. Short TOCSY mixing times give a COSY like result (e.g. $3J_{HH}$ coupling), longer mixing times give larger coupling (e.g. $4J_{HH}$ and $5J_{HH}$ coupling). An example of how the experiment was used is shown below, the proton at 8.05 ppm (H-4) is irradiated in each case. At short mixing times (15 ms), a COSY-like spectrum was obtained and coupling to H-3 was observed (Figure A.2 a). At intermediate mixing times coupling to both H-3 ($3J_{HH}$) and H-2 ($4J_{HH}$) was observed, at longer mixing times $3J_{HH}$, $4J_{HH}$ and now $5J_{HH}$ (to H-1) can be observed.
Figure A.2 1-D SELTOCSY NMR spectra of 4.8c (d6-DMSO) with mixing times of a) 15 ms, b) 30 ms and c) 50 ms. The spectrum shown in d) is a standard $^1$H NMR spectra of 4.8c (see Figure A.1 for the atom labelling scheme).

1-D SELNOESY
The 1-D SELNOESY is a 1-D version of the standard NOESY experiment. Like the 1-D SELTOCSY experiment the 1-D SELNOESY has the advantages of being quicker, having better resolution and eliminating any interfering signals. Again, a proton is irradiated and any signals that show a through space interaction will appear in the spectra. The $^1$H-$^1$H COSY and 1-D SELTOCSY experiments described above give information about the order of the protons.
around the aromatic ring, however they do not indicate the direction around the ring (\textit{i.e.} is the doublet at 8.05 ppm H-1 or H-4). However, irradiation of the methylene protons at 4.96 ppm in a 1D-SELNOESY experiment result in a correlation to the proton at 8.05 ppm – hence 8.05 ppm must be H-4 (Figure A.3).

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{figure.png}
\caption{a) 1-D SELNOESY spectrum of 4.8c (d$_6$-DMSO), with the signal at 4.96 ppm irradiated and showing a through space interaction to the proton at 8.05 ppm b) standard $^1$H NMR spectrum of 4.8c (see Figure A.1 for the atom labelling scheme).}
\end{figure}

$^1$H-$^{13}$C HSQC
The $^1$H-$^{13}$C HSQC (Heteronuclear Single Quantum Coherence) experiment gives $^1J_{CH}$ correlations – \textit{i.e.} it basically indicates which protons are coupled to which carbons.

$^1$H-$^{13}$C HMBC
The $^1$H-$^{13}$C HMBC (Heteronuclear Multiple Bond Correlation) experiment gives larger proton-carbon correlations (\textit{e.g.} $^2J_{CH}$ and $^3J_{CH}$) and was mainly used in the assignment of quaternary carbon signals.
I.2.3 Mass Spectrometry
Electrospray mass spectra were acquired on a Fisons Instruments VG Platform II spectrometer. Approximately 1 mg of the sample was dissolved in a drop of dichloromethane and the solution made up to approximately 1 mL with methanol.

High resolution mass spectra were acquired on a Bruker Daltonics MicrOTOF spectrometer. The samples (0.1 mg mL\(^{-1}\), made up as above) were introduced via a syringe pump. The spectrometer was calibrated with a sodium formate standard prior to each use.

To aid in assignment, experimental isotope patterns were compared with theoretical patterns obtained using the Isotope computer program.\(^{(3)}\)

I.2.4 X-ray Crystallography
Unit cell dimensions and intensity data was acquired at either the University of Auckland by Dr. Tania Groutso (Bruker Smart CCD Diffractometer) or at the University of Canterbury by Dr. Jan Wikaira (Bruker Nonius Apex II CCD Diffractometer). Semi-empirical absorption corrections were applied by SADABS.\(^{(4)}\)

The crystal structures were solved by either the Direct Methods or Patterson (heavy atom) options of SHELXS-97.\(^{(5)}\) Refinement of the data was carried out by SHELXL-97\(^{(6)}\) with a final check on the crystallographic information file by PLATON.\(^{(7)}\) Molecular diagrams were generated using the ORTEP program.\(^{(8)}\) All programs were operating under the WinGX suite of programs (Version 1.70.01).\(^{(9)}\)

I.2.5 Microelemental Analysis
Elemental analysis for carbon, hydrogen and nitrogen were undertaken on vacuum dried samples at the Campbell Microanalytical Laboratory, University of Otago.
I.2.6 Biological Assays
Biological assays to determine the \textit{in vitro} anticancer activity against the P388 Murine Leukemia cell line were carried out by Gill Ellis of the Marine Chemistry Group at the University of Canterbury. The sample was dissolved in the solvent and incubated with P388 murine leukemia cells for 72 hours. IC$_{50}$ values are determined using absorbance values obtained when the dye MMT tetrazolium (yellow) is reduced to MMT formazan (purple).

I.3 Preparation of Inorganic and Organometallic Precursors

\textbf{H[AuCl$_4$].4H$_2$O$^{(10)}$}
Gold nuggets (5 g) were dissolved in aqua regia (100 mL) with gentle stirring and heating. The resulting solution was reduced in volume (to approximately 10-15 mL) then another portion of concentrated HCl (50 mL) was added. The reduction in volume and addition of HCl was repeated twice. The yellow solution was reduced (to 10 mL) to give a red liquid which solidified on cooling to give H[AuCl$_4$].4H$_2$O quantitatively. The hygroscopic solid was stored in a tightly sealed vial.

\textbf{[NMe$_4$][AuCl$_4$]$^{(11)}$}
To an aqueous (50 mL) solution of H[AuCl$_4$].4H$_2$O (2.00 g, 4.85 mmol) excess [Me$_4$N]Cl (0.65 g, excess) was added. A yellow precipitate formed immediately and the resulting solution was stirred for a further 30 minutes. The solution was filtered and the bright yellow solid washed with copious amounts of water followed by ethanol and diethyl ether. Drying under vacuum gave [Me$_4$N][AuCl$_4$] in near quantitative yields.

\textbf{Preparation of PhCH$_2$Mn(CO)$_5$}$^{(12)}$
In a 100 mL Schlenk flask (under a nitrogen atmosphere) a 1% sodium amalgam was prepared by carefully adding small portions of sodium metal (0.7 g) to mercury (5 mL, 70 g) and swirling until the sodium had dissolved. When cool, dry, degassed THF (60 mL) was added to
the amalgam followed by Mn\(_2\)(CO)\(_{10}\) (2.00 g, 5.13 mmol) and the solution was stirred vigorously for 2 hours. The resulting green solution of Na[Mn(CO)\(_5\)] was transferred by a nitrogen-flushed syringe to another Schlenk flask (again under nitrogen) containing benzyl bromide (1.20 mL, 10 mmol). After stirring for a further 10 minutes white NaBr precipitated out. The THF was removed under reduced pressure and the residue extracted into petroleum spirits (4 × 10 mL) and filtered. The solvent was removed to give a yellow solid. Sublimation of the solid onto a water-cooled cold finger gave PhCH\(_2\)Mn(CO)\(_5\) as a pale yellow solid (1.8 g, 70 %).

**Preparation of 2-Br(C\(_6\)H\(_4\))PPh\(_2\)**

Under nitrogen, \(p\)-dibromobenzene (5.00 g, 0.02 mol) was added to a solution of dry, degassed THF and diethyl ether (1:1, 60 mL). The solution was cooled to -110 °C in an ethanol slush bath and \(n\)-BuLi (10 mL, 2.0 M in cyclohexane) was added dropwise – the resulting solution was stirred at -110 °C for a further 40 minutes during which time a white solid formed. Distilled Ph\(_2\)PCl (3.57 mL, 0.02 mol) was added dropwise to the solution and stirred at low temperature for a further 15 minutes. The slush bath was removed and when the solution had warmed to room temperature NH\(_4\)Cl (sat. aq, 50 mL) was added. The aqueous layer was washed with diethyl ether (2 × 30 mL) and the organic layers were combined and dried with anhydrous MgSO\(_4\). The solvent was removed under pressure and the resulting pale yellow solid was recrystallised from hot ethanol to give 2-Br(C\(_6\)H\(_4\))PPh\(_2\) (4.43 g, 65%).

\(^{31}\)P\(_1\)(\(^1\)H) NMR (CDCl\(_3\)): \(\delta -4.4 \text{ ppm.}\)

**Preparation of Hg(C\(_6\)H\(_4\)PPh\(_2\))\(_2\)**

2-Br(C\(_6\)H\(_4\))PPh\(_2\) (1.00 g, 2.93 mmol) was dissolved in dry, degassed diethyl ether (15 mL) and \(n\)-BuLi (1.5 mL, 2.0 M in cyclohexane) was added dropwise. After stirring for 10 minutes additional diethyl ether was added (60 mL). HgCl\(_2\) (0.358 g, 1.32 mmol) was added in one portion and the resulting solution stirred at room temperature for 72 hours. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the white solid extracted into hot toluene (2 × 60 mL)
and filtered to give a pale yellow solution. Addition of hexanes (120 mL) resulted in the immediate precipitation of Hg(C₆H₄PPh₂)₂ (0.73 g, 77%).

$^{31}$P{$^1$H} NMR (CDCl₃): $\delta 0.4 \ (^3J_{P-Hg} = 207 \text{ Hz})$ ppm.

I.4 References